

---

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

---

**FORM 10-K**

**Annual report pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

**For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015**

**Transition report pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

**For the transition period from            to**

**Commission File No. 001-31791**

---

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC.**

**Nevada**  
(State or other jurisdiction  
of incorporation)

**4960 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Suite 240, Norcross, GA**  
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

**04-3562325**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**30071**  
(Zip Code)

**(678) 620-3186**  
(Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code)

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:**

<u>Title of each class</u>	<u>Name of each exchange on which registered</u>
<b>Common Stock, \$0.001 Par Value Per Share</b>	<b>The NASDAQ Capital Market</b>
<b>Units, each consisting of two shares of Common Stock and one Warrant to purchase one share of Common Stock</b>	<b>The NASDAQ Capital Market</b>
<b>Common Stock Purchase Warrants</b>	<b>The NASDAQ Capital Market</b>

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:**

**None**

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§ 232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). YES  NO

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer  Accelerated filer  Non-accelerated filer  Smaller reporting company

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES  NO

The aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates computed by reference to the price at which the common equity was sold, or the average bid and asked price of such common equity, as of June 30, 2015 was \$52.7 million.

The number of shares outstanding of the registrant's common stock as of March 10, 2016 was 28,825,033.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Portions of the definitive Proxy Statement for the 2016 Annual Meeting of Stockholders are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Report.

---

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**INDEX TO FORM 10-K  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2015**

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>PART 1</b>	
ITEM 1. <a href="#">Business</a>	1
ITEM 1A. <a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	12
ITEM 1B. <a href="#">Unresolved Staff Comments</a>	27
ITEM 2. <a href="#">Properties</a>	27
ITEM 3. <a href="#">Legal Proceedings</a>	27
ITEM 4. <a href="#">Mine Safety Disclosure</a>	29
<b>PART II</b>	
ITEM 5. <a href="#">Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</a>	30
ITEM 6. <a href="#">Selected Financial Data</a>	32
ITEM 7. <a href="#">Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	32
ITEM 7A. <a href="#">Quantitative and Qualitative Discussions About Market Risk</a>	43
ITEM 8. <a href="#">Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</a>	43
ITEM 9. <a href="#">Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</a>	44
ITEM 9A. <a href="#">Controls and Procedures</a>	44
ITEM 9B. <a href="#">Other Information</a>	45
<b>PART III</b>	
ITEM 10. <a href="#">Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</a>	46
ITEM 11. <a href="#">Executive Compensation</a>	46
ITEM 12. <a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</a>	46
ITEM 13. <a href="#">Certain Relationships, Related Transactions and Director Independence</a>	46
ITEM 14. <a href="#">Principal Accountant Fees and Services</a>	46
<b>PART IV</b>	
ITEM 15. <a href="#">Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules</a>	47
<a href="#">SIGNATURES</a>	53

**PART I**

**Item 1. Business**

**Overview**

We are a clinical stage biopharmaceutical company engaged in drug research and development to create new therapies for fibrotic disease and cancer. Our drug candidates are based on our method of targeting galectin proteins, which are key mediators of biologic and pathologic functions. We use naturally occurring, readily-available plant products as starting material in manufacturing processes to create proprietary complex carbohydrates with specific molecular weights and other pharmaceutical properties. These complex carbohydrate molecules are appropriately formulated into acceptable pharmaceutical formulations. Using these unique carbohydrate-based candidate compounds that largely bind and inhibit galectin proteins, particularly galectin-3, we are undertaking the focused pursuit of therapies for indications where galectins have a demonstrated role in the pathogenesis of a given disease. We focus on diseases with serious, life-threatening consequences to patients and those where current treatment options are limited. Our strategy is to establish and implement clinical development programs that add value to our business in the shortest period of time possible and to seek strategic partners when a program becomes advanced and requires significant additional resources.

Our lead galectin-3 inhibitor is GR-MD-02, and has been demonstrated in preclinical models to reverse liver fibrosis and cirrhosis. GR-MD-02 has the potential to treat many diseases due to its involvement in multiple key biological pathways such as cell differentiation, cell growth, and apoptosis (cell death). Galectin Therapeutics Inc. is using this inhibitor to treat advanced liver fibrosis and liver cirrhosis in NASH (non-alcoholic steatohepatitis) patients. We have completed Phase 1 clinical studies and currently are engaged in two Phase 2 clinical studies in NASH patients with advanced fibrosis (NASH-FX) and NASH patients with cirrhosis (NASH-CX). Both disease states are progressive, currently not treatable and ultimately may result in liver failure which has poor prognosis and no effective, approved medical therapies other than liver transplant. Galectin-3 expression is highly increased in patients with liver fibrosis and liver cirrhosis. We believe that our galectin-3 inhibitor, by reducing galectin-3 at the cellular level, ultimately showing a strong anti-fibrotic potential may provide a novel treatment for various forms of liver fibrosis.

We endeavor to leverage our scientific and product development expertise as well as established relationships with outside sources to achieve cost-effective and efficient drug development. These outside sources, amongst others, provide us with expertise in preclinical models, pharmaceutical development, toxicology, clinical trial operations, pharmaceutical manufacturing, sophisticated physical and chemical characterization, and commercial development. We also have established several collaborative scientific discovery programs with leading experts in carbohydrate chemistry and characterization. These discovery programs are generally aimed at the targeted development of new carbohydrate molecules which bind galectin proteins and offer alternative options to larger market segments in our primary disease indications. We also have established a discovery program aimed at the targeted development of small molecules (non-carbohydrate) which bind galectin proteins and may afford options for alternative means of drug delivery (e.g., oral) and as a result expand the potential uses of our compounds. We are pursuing a development pathway to clinical enhancement and commercialization for our lead compounds in immune enhancement for cancer therapy as well as in both liver fibrosis and fatty liver disease. All of our proposed products are presently in development, including pre-clinical and clinical trials.

We were founded in July 2000 as Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a Massachusetts corporation. On April 25, 2001, DTR-Med Pharma Corp. (“DTR”), which was incorporated in Nevada on January 26, 2001, entered into a stock exchange agreement with Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc., whereby DTR acquired all of the outstanding shares of common stock of Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. On May 10, 2001, DTR changed its name to “Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc.” and on June 7, 2001, the Massachusetts corporation was merged into the Nevada corporation. On May 26, 2011, Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. changed its name to “Galectin Therapeutics Inc.” In October, 2012, we moved our headquarters to a suburb of Atlanta, GA to be closer to a center of discovery collaboration while maintaining a laboratory operation in the Boston area.

## Our Drug Development Programs

Galectins are a class of proteins that are made by many cells in the body. As a group, these proteins are able to bind to sugar molecules that are part of other proteins, glycoproteins, in and on the cells of our body. Galectin proteins act as a kind of molecular glue, bringing together molecules that have sugars on them. Galectin proteins, in particular galectin-3, are known to be markedly increased in a number of important diseases including inflammatory diseases, scarring of organs (e.g. liver, lung, kidney, and heart) and cancers of many kinds. The increase in galectin protein promotes the disease and is detrimental to the patient. Published data show that mice lacking the galectin-3 gene, and thus unable to produce galectin-3, are incapable of developing liver fibrosis in response to toxic insult to the liver and in fatty liver disease.

We have one new chemical entity (NCE) in development, GR-MD-02, which has shown promise in preclinical and early clinical studies in treatment of fibrosis and in cancer therapy. Currently we are focusing on development of GR-MD-02 intended to be used in the treatment of liver fibrosis associated with fatty liver disease (NASH), moderate to severe plaque psoriasis, and in cancer therapy in combination with immune-system modifying agent(s). GR-MD-02 is a proprietary, patented compound derived from natural, readily available, plant-based starting materials, which, following chemical processing, exhibits the properties of binding to and inhibiting galectin-3 proteins. A second NCE, GM-CT-01 is a proprietary, patented compound that is made from a completely different starting source plant material and also binds and inhibits galectin proteins. Previously in clinical development for cancer indications, this compound continues to be explored in preclinical studies.

Our product pipeline is shown below:

<u>Indication</u>	<u>Drug</u>	<u>Status</u>
<b>Fibrosis</b>		
NASH with Advanced Fibrosis: NASH-CX trial and NASH-FX trial	GR-MD-02	IND submitted January 2013. Results from the Phase 1 clinical trial were reported in 2014, with final results reported in January 2015. End of Phase 1 meeting held with FDA in 2014. Two Phase 2 clinical trials are being conducted. The NASH CX trial, is designed for patients with cirrhosis, and the NASH FX trial is designed for patients with advanced fibrosis but not cirrhosis. The NASH FX trial top line data is expected around end of Q3-2016 and the NASH CX trial top line data is expected around the end of 2017.
Lung Fibrosis	GR-MD-02	In pre-clinical development
Kidney Fibrosis	GR-MD-02	In pre-clinical development
Cardiac and Vascular Fibrosis	GR-MD-02 and GM-CT-01	In pre-clinical development
<b>Cancer Immunotherapy</b>		
Melanoma	GR-MD-02	Investigator IND submitted in December 2013. Phase 1B study in process. A second Phase 1B study is planned to begin by April 2016. Investigator IND for that study submitted in September 2015.
<b>Psoriasis</b>		
Moderate to Severe Plaque Psoriasis	GR-MD-02	IND submitted March 2015. A phase 2a trial in moderate to severe plaque psoriasis patients began in January 2016. Data is expected around Q3-2016.

*Fibrosis.* GR-MD-02 is our lead product candidate for treatment of fibrotic disease. Our preclinical data show that GR-MD-02 has a significant therapeutic effect on liver fibrosis as shown in several relevant animal models. In addition, in NASH animal models GR-MD-02 has been shown to reduce liver fat, inflammation, and

## [Table of Contents](#)

ballooning degeneration or death of liver cells. Therefore, we chose GR-MD-02 as the lead candidate in a development program targeted initially at fibrotic liver disease associated with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH, or fatty liver disease). In January 2013, an Investigational New Drug (“IND”) was submitted to the FDA with the goal of initiating a Phase 1 study in patients with NASH and advanced liver fibrosis to evaluate the human safety of GR-MD-02 and pharmacodynamics biomarkers of disease. On March 1, 2013, the FDA indicated we could proceed with a US Phase 1 clinical trial for GR-MD-02 with a development program aimed at obtaining support for a proposed indication of GR-MD-02 for treatment of NASH with advanced fibrosis. The Phase 1 trial was completed and demonstrated that GR-MD-02 up to 8 mg/Kg, i.v. was safe and well tolerated and the human pharmacokinetic data defined a drug dose for use in the planned Phase 2 trials. Additionally, there was evidence of a pharmacodynamic effect of GR-MD-02 at the 8 mg/kg dose with a decrease in alpha 2 macroglobulin, a serum marker of fibrotic activity, and a reduction in liver stiffness as determined by FibroScan®. An “End of Phase 1 Meeting” was held with FDA which, amongst other items, provided guidance on the primary endpoint for the Phase 2 clinical trial.

Additionally, an open label drug-drug interaction study was completed during the second quarter of 2015, with GR-MD-02 and it showed that with 8 mg/kg dose of GR-MD-02 and 2 mg/kg dose of midazolam there was no drug-drug interaction and no serious adverse events or drug-related adverse events were observed. This study was required by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the primary objective was to determine if single or multiple intravenous (IV) doses of GR-MD-02 affect the pharmacokinetics (PK) of midazolam. The secondary objective was to assess the safety and tolerability of GR-MD-02 when administered concomitantly with midazolam. The lack of a drug interaction in this study enables Galectin to expand the number of patients eligible for its Phase 2 clinical trial. In addition, should GR-MD-02 be approved for marketing, the success of this study supports a broader patient population for the drug label.

Our Phase 2 program in fibrotic disease consists of two separate human clinical trials. The first clinical trial is the NASH-CX study for patients with NASH with cirrhosis, which began enrolling in June 2015. This study is a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, parallel-group Phase 2 trial to evaluate the safety and efficacy of GR-MD-02 for the treatment of liver fibrosis and resultant portal hypertension in patients with NASH cirrhosis. A total of 156 patients at approximately 50 sites in the United States will be randomized to receive either 2 mg/kg of GR-MD-02, 8 mg/kg of GR-MD-02 or placebo, with 52 patients in each group. The primary endpoint is a reduction in change in hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG). Patients will receive an infusion every other week for one year, total of 26 infusions, and will be evaluated to determine the change in HVPG as compared with placebo. HVPG will be correlated with secondary endpoints of fibrosis on liver biopsy as well as with measurement of liver stiffness (FibroScan<sup>®</sup>) and assessment of liver metabolism (<sup>13</sup>C-methacetin breath test, Exalenz), which are non-invasive measures of the liver that may be used in future studies. Data readout is expected by the end of 2017.

The second clinical trial is the NASH-FX for patients with NASH advanced fibrosis uses a variety of non-invasive fibrosis assessment technologies. The first patient in this 30 patient study is was consented in September 2015, and the study is designed for 15 patients receiving 8 mg/kg of GR-MD-02 and 15 receiving placebo to be treated. That study will evaluate the safety and efficacy of GR-MD-02 for a four month treatment period of bi-weekly infusions of GR-MD-02 on non-invasive measures on liver stiffness as assessed imaging of liver fibrosis using multi-parametric magnetic resonance imaging (LiverMultiScan<sup>®</sup>, Perspectum Diagnostics), as the primary endpoint, as well as magnetic resonance-elastography and FibroScan score, as secondary endpoints. Top-line data is expected to be available in the third quarter of 2016.

Our drug candidate provides a promising new approach for the therapy of fibrotic diseases, and liver fibrosis in particular. Fibrosis is the formation of excess connective tissue (collagen and other proteins plus cellular elements such as myofibroblasts) in response to damage, inflammation or repair. When the fibrotic tissue becomes confluent, it obliterates the cellular architecture, leading to scarring and dysfunction of the underlying organ. Given galectin-3's broad biological functionality, it has been demonstrated to be involved in cancer, inflammation and fibrosis, heart disease, renal disease and stroke. We have further demonstrated the broad

## [Table of Contents](#)

applicability of the actions of our galectin-3 inhibitor's biological effect in ameliorating fibrosis involving lung, kidney and cardiac tissues in a variety of animal models.

The focus and goal of the therapeutic program is to stop the progression of and reverse the fibrosis in the liver and, thereby improve liver function and prevent the development of complications of fibrosis/cirrhosis and liver-related mortality in patients.

**Cancer Immunotherapy.** We believe there is potential for galectin inhibition to play a key role in the burgeoning area of cancer immunotherapy. For example, there have been several recent approvals of drugs that enhance a patient's immune system to fight cancer. With many additional vaccines and immune stimulatory agents in development, industry analysts forecast that this market could generate over \$35 billion in sales over the next 10 years. It is our goal to use a galectin inhibitor to enhance the immune system function to fight cancer in a way that complements other approaches to this type of therapy. Our drug candidates provide a promising new therapeutic approach to enhance the activity of the immune system against cancer cells. Preclinical studies have indicated that GR-MD-02 enhances the immune response to cancer cells, increased tumor shrinkage and enhanced survival in immune competent mice with prostate, breast, melanoma and sarcoma cancers when combined with one of the immune checkpoint inhibitors, anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1. These preclinical data led to the filing of an Investigator-sponsored IND and the initiation of a study of GR-MD-02 in combination with Yervoy® (ipilimumab) in a Phase 1B study of patients with metastatic melanoma. This study is being conducted under the sponsorship of Providence Portland Medical Center's Earle A. Chiles Research Institute (EACRI). A study with Keytruda and GRMD-02 is conducted by EACRI is expected to begin enrolling by April 2016.

We believe the mechanism of action for GR-MD-02 is based upon interaction with, and inhibition of, galectin proteins, particularly galectin-3, which are expressed at high levels in certain pathological states including inflammation, fibrosis and cancer. While GR-MD-02 is capable of binding to multiple galectin proteins, we believe that it has the greatest affinity for galectin-3, the most prominent galectin implicated in pathological processes. Blocking galectin in cancer and liver fibrosis has specific salutary effects on the disease process, as discussed below.

**Psoriasis.** During our Phase 1 NASH fibrosis trial with GR-MD-02, a clinical effect on plaque psoriasis was observed in a NASH patient who also had this disease. This patient had marked improvement in her psoriasis, with improvement beginning after the third infusion. She reported that her psoriasis was "completely gone" and her skin was "normal" after the fourth infusion. Her skin remained normal for 17 months after the final infusion of study drug. The patient is convinced that the improvement in her psoriasis is related to the study drug.

This serendipitous finding, combined with galectin-3 protein being markedly upregulated in the capillary epithelia (small blood vessels) of the psoriatic dermis (plaque lesions), led to a phase 2a trial in patients with moderate to severe plaque psoriasis. GR-MD-02 inhibition of galectin-3 may attenuate capillary changes in the psoriatic dermis and inflammatory recruitment, perhaps explaining the improvements observed in the NASH fibrosis trial patient. In this open-label, unblinded trial (no placebo, all patients knowingly receive active drug), 10 patients with moderate to severe plaque psoriasis are administered GR-MD-02 every two weeks for 12 weeks. We anticipate top line data for this trial by the end of the third quarter of 2016.

### **Liver Fibrosis: New Approach for a Significant Unmet Medical Need**

When an internal organ is exposed to chronic disease one of the responses is that scar tissue is laid down in the organ (this process is called fibrosis). The longer the disease affects the organ, the more fibrous tissue is deposited and this ultimately results in the failure of the organ. This chronic fibrosis of organs may occur in the liver, lung, kidney, and heart, as well as others and, as a result, fibrosis of organs has been estimated to account for as much as 45% of all mortality in the United States. Scientific findings during the last few years indicate that the galectin-3 protein is critically important in this fibrotic process in multiple organs.

## [Table of Contents](#)

In the liver, fibrosis is the end result of multiple inflammatory conditions and infections. Progressive liver fibrosis leads to cirrhosis, which results in reduction of liver function, multiple medical complications and ultimately death. It is estimated that 1-2 million patients have cirrhosis in the United States with close to 50,000 losing their lives yearly. Only a fraction of patients' lives, approximately 6,200 per year, are saved by liver transplantation at a cost of approximately \$350,000 per transplantation. One condition in particular that frequently leads to cirrhosis is non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, or NASH, a liver disease characterized by the accumulation of fat in the liver with associated inflammation and fibrosis, which can lead to end-stage cirrhosis requiring liver transplantation. The National Institute of Health estimates that 9 to 15 million Americans are affected by NASH, and other sources suggest it may be as many as 30 million people have NASH, and forecasts that the number of Americans affected by this disease is growing due to obesity and diabetes, with the potential to become the leading cause of liver cirrhosis and liver transplantation in the future. Liver transplantation is currently the only therapeutic approach to NASH or other forms of liver fibrosis as, to the best of our knowledge, there are no drug therapies on the market. Organ transplantation is a difficult, risky and costly procedure as organ availability is scarce and there is the risk of developing cirrhosis in the transplanted liver from the same disease that damaged the patient's original liver and therefore, there is a great need for other therapeutic options. All diseases that affect the liver (viral hepatitis, alcoholic liver disease, and fatty liver as examples) lead to the development of scarring of the liver.

The primary focus of the Company is to use galectin inhibitors to block galectin-3 and treat organ scarring or fibrosis in the liver. There are no approved therapies for treatment of liver fibrosis. We believe that our drug candidates have the potential to treat NASH and other forms of liver fibrosis. Scientific evidence suggests that galectin-3 is essential for the development of liver fibrosis in animals. Published data show that mice lacking the galectin-3 gene, and thus unable to produce galectin-3, are essentially incapable of developing liver fibrosis in response to toxic insult to the liver and in fatty liver disease. Moreover, mice that do not have the galectin-3 gene are resistant to lung and kidney fibrosis. These published data show that galectin-3 is a critical protein for the development of organ fibrosis. Our drugs, based on experiments in well characterized animal models, are also potentially useful in scarring or fibrosis of other organs such as lung and kidney which expands the possibilities for future therapeutic indications.

We have evaluated the ability of GR-MD-02 to block galectin-3 in animal models of liver fibrosis, the conclusions of which yielded positive results. Our pre-clinical data show that GR-MD-02 may have a therapeutic effect on liver fibrosis as shown in several relevant animal models. Therefore, we chose GR-MD-02 as the lead candidate in a development program targeted initially at fibrotic liver disease associated with NASH.

We evaluated GR-MD-02 in pre-clinical toxicology and pharmacology studies during 2013 and filed an IND with the FDA in January 2013 for initiating human studies in patients with NASH. In February 2013 we entered into an agreement with CTI Clinical Trial Services to assist with the design, development and conduct of one or more clinical research studies, specifically for services with respect to our Phase 1 clinical trials to evaluate safety of GR-MD-02 in patients with NASH. The FDA notified us in March 2013 that we may proceed with a Phase 1 clinical trial for patients with NASH and we began enrolling patients in the Phase 1 clinical trial in the third quarter of 2013. In August 2013, GR-MD-02 was granted Fast Track designation by the FDA for NASH with hepatic fibrosis, commonly known as fatty liver disease with advanced fibrosis. In January 2014, we completed the enrollment of the first cohort of patients in the Phase 1 trial with no serious adverse events being reported. We reported initial safety and tolerability results from the first cohort of patients on June 30, 2014. The second cohort of this Phase 1 trial began and enrollment was completed in April 2014. In July 2014, we reported the results from the second cohort of patients. Enrollment of the third cohort of Phase 1 began in July 2014 with interim results presented in November 2014 with the final report on cohort 3 presented in January 2015. The results of the Phase 1 study demonstrate that (i) GR-MD-02 was safe and well tolerated by patients with advanced NASH liver fibrosis after IV administration of four doses of 2 mg/kg, 4 mg/kg and 8mg/kg lean body weight, (ii) Pharmacokinetics revealed drug exposure in humans at the 8 mg/kg dose that was equivalent to the upper range of the targeted therapeutic dose determined from effective doses in NASH animal models, (iii) Disease Serum Marker Effect showed there was a statistically significant, dose-dependent reduction in

## [Table of Contents](#)

FibroTest® scores due to a statistically significant reduction in alpha-2 macroglobulin (A2M) serum levels, and (iv) Liver Stiffness Effect, as measured by FibroScan® showed that there was a signal of reduced liver stiffness in patients receiving GR-MD-02. The reduction seen in A2M does *not* necessarily mean fibrosis got better in this short study, but does suggest changes in the fibrogenic process that might lead to an improvement in fibrosis with longer-term therapy. These Phase 1 results in NASH patients with advanced fibrosis, in addition to completion of further toxicology and drug-drug interaction studies provide a firm foundation for entry into a Phase 2 development program (described above).

GR-MD-02 is a proprietary, patented galactoarabino-rhamnogalacturonan polysaccharide polymer that is comprised predominantly of galacturonic acid, galactose, arabinose, rhamnose, and smaller amounts of other sugars. Structural studies have shown that GR-MD-02 binds to galectin-1 and to galectin-3 with binding affinity to galectin-3 being significantly greater than binding to galectin-1. With respect to GR-MD-02, we currently have a number of issued US patents including one composition of matter patent, one method of manufacture patent, one method of use patent in patients with NASH, one method of use patent in patients with liver fibrosis, and one method of use patent in patients with diabetic kidney disease. Additional patent applications are pending with respect to, amongst other uses, cancer immunotherapy, lung fibrotic disease, and inflammatory disease associated with increase in inducible nitric oxide synthase. Patents have also been granted with respect to liver fibrosis, NASH, and liver fibrosis in combination with other therapeutic agents. Compounds for subcutaneous administration and oral delivery are currently under pre-clinical development.

### **Galectin Inhibition in Cancer Therapy**

We believe the potential exists for galectin inhibition to play an important role in cancer therapy. Galectin proteins, particularly galectin-1 and galectin-3, have been shown to be highly expressed in the majority of cancers and have multiple roles in promoting cancer progression, including tumor cell invasion, metastasis, angiogenesis, and tumor evasion of the immune system.

The role of galectins in cancer immunotherapy can be understood through the “Galectin Effect”, a recent discovery of how tumors avoid the body’s own immune system, i.e., the tumors secrete galectin proteins that block the body’s efforts to fight tumors. Our current program to block the “Galectin Effect” is based on the research of Dr. Pierre van der Bruggen (of the Ludwig Institute of Cancer Research in Brussels, Belgium), demonstrating that galectin-3, which is produced by the vast majority of human cancers, binds to and blocks the actions of tumor-infiltrating T-lymphocytes, the major immune cell in the body’s defense against cancers. In addition, Dr. Will Redmond of the Earl Chiles Cancer Research Institute in Portland Oregon has shown that our galectin inhibitors can enhance the anti-tumor immunogenic effect of other immunotherapies based on targeting lymphocyte checkpoints such as CTLA4. Based on these results, we believe that the body’s immune cells may be unable to attack and kill tumor cells in the presence of galectins. Using this approach, the mechanism of action for our drugs seeks to block galectins and, in turn, restore the ability of the T-lymphocytes to kill tumor cells.

The Company supported preclinical studies led by tumor immunology expert William L. Redmond, Ph.D., of the Providence Portland Medical Center’s Earle A. Chiles Research Institute (EACRI). The preclinical study found that GR-MD-02 increased tumor shrinkage and enhanced survival in immune competent mice with prostate and breast cancers when combined with one of the immune checkpoint inhibitors, anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1. These findings suggest a role for GR-MD-02 in cancer immunotherapy. These preclinical observations by Dr Redmond provided scientific rationale for proceeding and lead to the filing by Providence Portland Medical Center of an Investigator-sponsored IND to conduct a Phase 1B study to determine if GR-MD-02 enhances the probability of melanoma response with ipilimumab by inducing proliferation, activation and memory function of CD8+ T cells in human patients. The company has licensed the underlying invention from Providence Portland Medical Center. This study represents a novel approach for patients with metastatic melanoma. The IND was approved by FDA in February 2014. This study is being conducted under the sponsorship of Providence Portland Medical Center’s Earle A. Chiles Research Institute (EACRI) and is being supported by the Company.



## [Table of Contents](#)

The study employs a dose escalation of GR-MD-02 in conjunction with the standard therapeutic dose of ipilimumab in patients with advanced melanoma for whom ipilimumab would be considered standard of care. In addition to monitoring for toxicity and clinical response by irRECIST criteria on imaging tests, blood samples will be obtained to assess immunologic measures relevant to galectin biology and ipilimumab T-cell check-point inhibition. Galectin Therapeutics is providing its proprietary compound GR-MD-02 to EACRI researchers, as well as supply researchers with supporting analysis of the pharmacokinetics of GR-MD-02 and the right to reference the Company's open IND on GR-MD-02. To date the first two dosing groups have been completed without serious adverse events which were determined to be related to GR-MD-02. The third dosing group is now enrolling.

Similar to the agreement set forth for the ipilimumab (Yervoy®)Phase 1B study, Providence Portland Medical Center submitted an IND in September 2015 to conduct a Phase 1B study of GR-MD-02 and pembrolizumab (Keytruda®) in patients with metastatic melanoma. The combination of GR-MD-02 and an anti-PD1 (pembrolizumab) has been shown to enhance T-cell activation, memory, and effector function, and promote better antitumor responses in multiple mouse studies. The study will test the hypothesis that galectin-3 antagonism using GR-MD-02 with enhance the probability of melanoma response using pembrolizumab in patients by inducing proliferation, activation and memory function of CD8+ T cells that recognize melanoma antigens. Similar to the ipilimumab study, the study employs a dose escalation of GR-MD-02 in conjunction with the standard therapeutic dose of pembrolizumab in patients with metastatic melanoma who have had progression of their melanoma after ipilimumab and/or BRAF targeted therapy when a BRAF mutation is present. In addition to monitoring for toxicity and clinical response, blood and tumor samples will be obtained to assess immunologic measures relevant to galectin biology and pembrolizumab T-cell checkpoint inhibition.

### **Patents and Proprietary Rights**

Our development and commercial viability, and ultimately our competitiveness, depend on our ability to develop and maintain the proprietary aspects of our technology and operate without infringing on the proprietary rights of others. We rely on a combination of patent, trademark, trade secret and copyright law and contract restrictions to protect the proprietary aspects of our technologies. We seek to limit disclosure of our intellectual property by requiring employees, consultants, and any third parties with access to our proprietary information to execute confidentiality agreements and by restricting access to that information.

In August 2015, we received a notice of allowance from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for patent application number 13/726,900, titled "Galactose-pronged polysaccharides in a formulation for antifibrotic therapies." This patent extends coverage of the Company's pectin-derived compounds (including broad molecular weight ranges and other sources of pectin) to include treatment of chronic kidney disease associated with the development of fibrosis, established kidney fibrosis, chronic lung disease associated with the development of fibrosis and established lung fibrosis. Claims in this patent include administering pectin-derived compound parenterally to a patient having at least one of the four aforementioned diseases where the established fibrosis or progression of the fibrosis or cirrhosis is inhibited or slowed down. Additional specific claims encompass deriving the compound from citrus pectin, apple pectin, soybean hull pectin or sugar beet pectin with a molecular weight between 2 kDa and 400kDa. Also covered is the step of administering the modified galacto-rhamnogalacturonan compound in an admixture with a therapeutic agent, where the agent is an antifibrotic compound

In August 2014, we received a notice of allowance from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for patent application number 13/573,442 titled "Composition of Novel Carbohydrate Drug for Treatment of Human Diseases." The patent covers composition and chemical structural claims for compounds that includes the Company's lead galectin inhibitor compound GR-MD-02 and will expire in December 2031. Claims include multiple routes of administration, including intravenous, subcutaneous and oral. The application also covers therapeutic formulations for use in the treatment of NASH (fatty liver disease), cancer and fibrotic, inflammatory and autoimmune disorders in which galectin proteins are involved, at least in part, in the pathogenesis.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Additional specific claims encompass liver fibrosis, kidney fibrosis, lung fibrosis or heart fibrosis. The patent, assigned U.S. Patent No. 8,871,925, was issued October 28, 2014.

In May 2014, we received notice of allowance from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for patent application number 13/998,197 titled “Galactose-Pronged Carbohydrate Compounds for the Treatment of Diabetic Nephropathy and Associated Disorders.” The patent covers both composition claim for and uses of the Company’s carbohydrate-based galectin inhibitor compound GR-MD-02 in patients with diabetic nephropathy, a type of progressive kidney disease that occurs in individuals with diabetes. Diabetic nephropathy is the major cause for chronic renal failure in the United States. The patent, assigned U.S. Patent No. 8,828,971, was issued September 9, 2014.

In February 2014, we received notice of issuance that the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office issued patent number 8,658,787 to the Company for its application titled “Galacto-rhamnogalacturonate compositions for the treatment of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease.” The patent covers the Company’s carbohydrate-based galectin inhibitor compound GR-MD-02 for use in patients with fatty liver disease with or without fibrosis or cirrhosis, providing patent protection through 2031. The major claims are for methods of obtaining galectin inhibitor compounds, obtaining a composition for parenteral or enteral administration in an acceptable pharmaceutical carrier and administering to a subject having at least one of the following: fatty liver, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, non-alcoholic hepatitis with liver fibrosis, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis with cirrhosis, or non-alcoholic steatohepatitis with cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. The use covers reversing or slowing the progression of disease activity or medical consequences of the disease. Applications are pending in multiple countries to extend patent protection globally.

In January 2014, we received a notice of allowance from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for Patent Application Number 13/550,962 titled “Galactose-Pronged Polysaccharides in a Formulation for Anti-fibrotic Therapies.” The patent covers both composition claim for and uses of the Company’s carbohydrate-based galectin inhibitor compound GR-MD-02 for use in patients with liver fibrosis in combination with other potential therapeutic agents. The patent covers use of GR-MD-02 with agents directed at multiple targets, some of which are currently in clinical development for fibrotic disorders including monoclonal antibodies to connective tissue growth factor, integrins, and TGF- $\beta$ 1. The patent, assigned U.S. Patent No. 8,722,645, was issued May 13, 2014.

In July 2012, we received a notice of issuance from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office for the U.S. Patent number 8,236,780 issued on August 7, 2013 titled “Galactose-prolonged polysaccharides in a formulation for antifibrotic therapies”. This methods patent covers key methods of derivation and use for our carbohydrate-based galectin inhibitor compound for use in patients with chronic liver disease associated with the development of fibrosis, established liver fibrosis or end-stage scarring, or cirrhosis. The major claim is for a method of obtaining a galacto-rhamnogalacturan compound from an apple pectin, obtaining a composition for parenteral administration the galacto-rhamnogalacturonan compound in an acceptable pharmaceutical carrier and administering to a subject having at least one of the following: chronic liver disease associated with the development of fibrosis, established liver fibrosis or cirrhosis. The use covers inhibiting or slowing the progression of fibrosis. GR-MD-02 is covered by this patent and it provides opportunities for development of additional compounds in the class.

As of January 31, 2016, we held 14 granted U.S. patents, 15 foreign granted patents (Japan, E.U., New Zealand, and Australia), 56 international patent applications, and 5 U.S. patent applications. Many of our patents and patent applications cover composition of matter for complex carbohydrate drugs and methods of use for reducing toxicity and enhancing chemotherapeutic drugs by co-administering a polysaccharide with a chemotherapeutic agent or for use in treatment of fibrosis. The scheduled expiration dates of our United States patents span from 2020 to 2033. We have corresponding patent applications pending in Europe, Israel, Australia and Brazil. Additionally, we have patent applications in other areas to utilize our carbohydrate-based compounds to treat disease other than cancer. See “Risk Factors — Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property”. Our competitive position, in part, is contingent upon protection of our intellectual property.

## Research

Our primary focus is on the design and testing of agents which target galectins in various *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems and which demonstrate efficacy in treatment of experimentally induced fibrosis or enhance immune system responsiveness in various tissues and in live animal models. We contract with independent laboratories and other facilities to conduct our research, which is designed, evaluated and managed by our scientists. While we conduct in house research related to our compounds at SBH laboratories in Massachusetts, we do not anticipate building additional in-house research or development facilities or hiring staff other than for purposes of designing and managing our out-sourced research.

As we develop products eligible for clinical trials, we contract with independent parties to assist in the design of the clinical trial protocols, arrange for and monitor the clinical trials, collect data and analyze data. In addition, certain clinical trials for our products may be conducted by government-sponsored agencies and will be dependent on governmental participation and funding. Our dependence on independent parties and clinical sites involves risks including reduced control over the timing and other aspects of our clinical trials.

In February 2013, the Company established a collaborative drug discovery program with Dr. Geert-Jan Boons' ("Dr. Boons") laboratory located in the Complex Carbohydrate Research Center at the University of Georgia. This on-going program is focused on the discovery of new carbohydrate molecules that can be used in the therapy of diseases where galectin proteins play a major role, including cancer, and inflammatory and fibrotic disorders. The aim of this program is to develop a pipeline of drugs that can target galectins. This is an important goal as follow-on compounds for our drugs currently in development and to extend the potential indications and routes of administration. The Complex Carbohydrate Research Center is a world-class program and Dr. Boons is a world renowned and pre-eminent carbohydrate chemist.

In September, 2014, the Company established a collaborative research program with Dr. William Redmonds' laboratory located at the Providence Portland Medical Center, Portland, Oregon. This program focuses on combination immunotherapy plus galectin inhibition to augment tumor immunogenicity.

During the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, our expenditures for research and development were \$13.1 million, \$8.4 million, and \$5.7 million, respectively. We expense all research and development costs as they are incurred.

In January, 2014 we created, with SBH Sciences, Inc. (Natick, Ma), Galectin Sciences, LLC, a collaborative joint venture to research and develop small organic molecule inhibitors of galectin-3 for oral administration.

Using computer molecular modeling techniques coupled with *in vitro* screening of a variety of compound libraries, SBH Sciences had identified several small organic molecules with promising galectin-3 inhibitory activity *in vitro*. Galectin Sciences LLC will further develop these unique organic molecule inhibitors of galectin-3 as drug candidates as well as develop additional candidates. Galectin Sciences LLC will build on the scientific body of knowledge amassed by SBH Sciences, coupled with Galectin Therapeutics' knowledge and expertise of galectins' pathological role and mechanism of action in inflammation, fibrosis and many cancers. The long-term goal of this effort is to identify and develop drug candidates that are highly specific galectin inhibitors which may be formulated for oral administration. The intermediate term goal is the development of small molecule inhibitors of galectin-3 which exhibit activity in *in vivo* preclinical disease models of fibrosis and cancer in which galectins play a key role.

Because, increased levels of galectin proteins have been implicated in a very large number of inflammatory, fibrotic and neoplastic diseases; the discovery and development of orally active galectin inhibitors would be a major step towards expanded treatment approaches for these disorders. This early drug discovery effort may lead to drugs that would expand our pipeline as follow on compounds to our first in class galectin inhibitors, GR-MD-02 and GM-CT-01.

## **Manufacturing and Marketing**

We are a development stage Company at this time and do not intend to establish internal facilities for the manufacture of our products for clinical or commercial production. To have our products manufactured, we have developed and will continue to develop relationships with third-parties that have established pharmaceutical manufacturing capabilities and expertise. We are not a party to any long-term agreement with any of our suppliers and, accordingly, we have our products manufactured on a purchase-order basis from one of two primary well-known and established pharmaceutical suppliers that meeting FDA requirements.

Because our products are in the development stage, we have not created a sales and marketing staff to commercialize pharmaceutical products. If we develop products eligible for commercial sale, we will need to develop a sales and marketing capability or rely on third parties such as licensees, collaborators, joint venture partners or independent distributors to market and sell those products. Our dependence on third-party manufacturers and marketers will involve risks relating to our reduced control, and other risks including those discussed in “Risk Factors — Risks Related to our Company — There are risks associated with reliance on third parties for manufacturing, marketing, sales, managed care and distribution infrastructure channels.”

## **Competition**

Many biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies are developing new technologies for the treatment of cancer and other diseases. Technologies such as monoclonal antibodies could be competitive with our galectin therapeutic platforms. Other companies are trying to improve the therapeutic profile of widely used protein-based drugs. While these companies may broaden the market for our products they may also provide competitive alternatives to our products. We expect increased competition in the area of galectins will be fueled by a nearly exponential increase in the publication rate of research papers on galectins.

See “Risk Factors — Risks Related to Our Company — We face intense competition in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries” for additional discussion related to our current and potential competition.

## **Government Regulation**

The research, development, testing, manufacture, labeling, promotion, advertising, distribution, and marketing, among other things, of our products are extensively regulated by governmental authorities in the United States and other countries. The FDA regulates drugs under the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and its implementing regulations. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements may subject us to administrative or judicial sanctions, such as FDA refusal to approve pending New Drug Applications (“NDAs”), warning letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, and/or criminal prosecution.

### ***Drug Approval Process***

Drugs may not be marketed in the U.S. until the FDA has approved them. The steps required before a drug may be marketed in the U.S. include:

1. Pre-clinical laboratory tests, animal studies, and formulation studies,
2. Submission to the FDA of an IND for human clinical testing, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin,
3. Adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials to establish the safety and efficacy of the drug for each indication,
4. Submission to the FDA of a NDA,
5. Satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities, at which the drug is produced to assess compliance with current good manufacturing procedures (“cGMP”) established by the FDA,

## [Table of Contents](#)

6. FDA review and approval of the NDA, and
7. FDA review and approval of a trademark used in connection with a pharmaceutical.

Pre-clinical tests include laboratory evaluation of product chemistry, toxicity, and formulation, as well as numerous in vitro and in vivo animal studies. The results of the pre-clinical tests, together with manufacturing information and analytical data, are submitted to the FDA as part of an IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin and the Company must resolve any outstanding FDA concerns or questions before clinical trials can proceed. There is no certainty that submission of an IND will result in the FDA allowing clinical trials to begin.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators and constant oversight by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing the objectives of the study, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety, and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated. Each protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND.

Clinical trials typically are conducted in three sequential phases, but the phases may overlap or be combined. Each trial must be reviewed and approved by an independent Institutional Review Board (“IRB”), before it can begin. Study subjects must sign an informed consent form before participating in a clinical trial. Phase 1 usually involves the initial introduction of the investigational drug into patients to evaluate its safety, dosage tolerance, pharmacodynamics, and, if possible, to gain an early indication of its effectiveness. Phase 2 usually involves trials in a limited patient population to (i) evaluate dosage tolerance and appropriate dosage; (ii) identify possible adverse effects and safety risks; and (iii) evaluate preliminarily the efficacy of the drug for specific indications. Phase 3 trials usually further evaluate clinical efficacy and test further for safety by using the drug in its final form in an expanded patient population. There is no assurance that these trials will be completed within a specified period of time, if at all.

Assuming successful completion of the required clinical testing, the results of the pre-clinical studies and of the clinical studies, together with other detailed information, including information on the manufacture and composition of the drug, are submitted to the FDA in an NDA requesting approval to market the product for one or more indications. Before approving an NDA, the FDA usually will inspect the facilities at which the drug is manufactured, and will not approve the product unless compliance with cGMP is satisfactory. If the FDA evaluates the NDA and the manufacturing facilities as acceptable, the FDA will generally issue an approval letter. If the FDA evaluates the NDA submission or the manufacturing facilities as not acceptable, the FDA will generally outline the deficiencies in the submission and often will request additional testing or information. Even if an applicant submits the requested additional information, the FDA ultimately may decide that the NDA does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval. The testing and approval process requires substantial time, effort, and financial resources, and there is no assurance that any approval will be granted on a timely basis, if at all. After approval, certain changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes, or additional labeling claims are subject to further FDA review and approval.

See “Risk Factors — Risks Related to the Regulation of Our Products — We will need regulatory approvals to commercialize our products” for additional discussion of regulatory risks related to our drug development program.

### ***FDA Priority Review***

FDA procedures provide for priority review of an NDA submitted for drugs that, compared to currently marketed products, offer a significant improvement in the treatment, diagnosis, or prevention of a disease. NDAs that are granted priority review are acted upon more quickly than NDAs given standard review. If we were to seek priority review, there can be no guarantee that the FDA will grant priority review status, that priority review status will affect the time of review, or that the FDA will approve the NDA submitted for any of our product candidates, whether or not priority review status is granted.

### ***Post-Approval Requirements***

If FDA approval of one or more of our products is obtained, we will be required to comply with a number of post-approval requirements. For example, holders of an approved NDA are required to report certain adverse reactions to the FDA and to comply with certain requirements concerning advertising and promotional labeling for their products. Also, quality control and manufacturing procedures must continue to conform to current Good Manufacturing Practices (“cGMP”) after approval, and the FDA periodically inspects manufacturing facilities to assess compliance with cGMP. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money, and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain cGMP compliance. In addition, discovery of problems with a product after approval may result in restrictions on a product, manufacturer, or holder of an approved NDA, including withdrawal of the product from the market. Also, new government requirements may be established that could delay or prevent regulatory approval of our products under development.

### ***Regulation Outside the United States***

Before our products can be marketed outside of the United States, they are subject to regulatory approval similar to that required in the United States, although the requirements governing the conduct of clinical trials, product licensing, pricing and reimbursement vary widely from country to country. No action can be taken to market any product in a country until an appropriate application has been approved by the regulatory authorities in that country. The current approval process varies from country to country, and the time spent in gaining approval varies from that required for FDA approval. In certain countries, the sales price of a product must also be approved. The pricing review period often begins after market approval is granted. No assurance can be given that even if a product is approved by a regulatory authority, satisfactory prices will be approved for such product.

### ***Environmental Regulation***

Pharmaceutical research and development involves the controlled use of hazardous materials. Biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies must comply with laws and regulations governing the use, generation, manufacture, storage, air emission, effluent discharge, handling and disposal of certain materials, biological specimens and wastes. We do not anticipate building in-house research, development or manufacturing facilities, and, accordingly, do not expect to have to comply directly with environmental regulation. However, our contractors and others conducting research, development or manufacturing activities for us may be required to incur significant compliance cost, and this could in turn could increase our expense or delay our completion of research or manufacturing programs.

### **Employees**

We currently have seven full-time employees, four of whom are involved primarily in management of our pre-clinical research and development and clinical trials and three who were involved primarily in management and administration of our Company. We also utilize contractors who provide product development, manufacture, analytical testing and clinical trial support.

### **Item 1A. Risk Factors**

An investment in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the risks described below and the other information before deciding to invest in our common stock. The risks described below are not the only ones facing our Company. Additional risks not presently known to us or that we currently consider immaterial may also adversely affect our business. We have attempted to identify below the major factors that could cause differences between actual and planned or expected results, but we cannot assure you that we have identified all of those factors.

If any of the following risks actually happen, our business, financial condition and operating results could be materially adversely affected. In this case, the trading price of our common stock could decline, and you could lose all or part of your investment.

## Risks Related to Our Company

### ***We have incurred net losses to date and must raise additional capital in order to continue to operate after March 31, 2017.***

We have incurred net losses in each year of operation since our inception in July 2000. Our accumulated deficit as of December 31, 2015 was \$140 million. We had \$25.8 million of unrestricted cash as of December 31, 2015. The Company currently believes there is sufficient cash to fund currently planned operations through the first quarter of 2017. We will require more cash to fund our operations after the first quarter of 2017. However, there can be no assurance that we will be successful in obtaining such new financing or, if available, that such financing will be obtainable on terms favorable to us. If our current clinical trials are unsuccessful or do not produce positive results, it may be particularly difficult for us to raise additional capital. If we do not raise additional cash for operations after the first quarter of 2017, we may not be able to continue operations and may be forced to seek bankruptcy protection.

We may raise capital through public or private equity financings, partnerships, debt financings, bank borrowings, or other sources. Additional funding may not be available on favorable terms or at all. If adequate funds are not otherwise available, we may need to significantly curtail operations. To obtain additional funding, we may need to enter into arrangements that require us to relinquish rights to certain technologies, products and/or potential markets. To the extent that additional capital is raised through the sale of equity, or securities convertible into equity, our equity holders may experience dilution of their proportionate ownership of the Company.

### ***We are a development stage company and have not yet generated any revenue.***

We are a development stage company and have not generated any revenues to date. There is no assurance that we will obtain FDA approval of GR-MD-02, GM-CT-01, or any other of our products in development and, even if we do so, that we will generate revenue sufficient to become profitable. Our failure to generate revenue and profit would likely lead to loss of your investment.

Our ability to generate revenue from product sales and achieve profitability will depend upon our ability to successfully commercialize products, including any of our current product candidates, or other product candidates that we may in-license or acquire in the future. Even if we are able to successfully achieve regulatory approval for these product candidates, we do not know when any of these products will generate revenue from product sales for us, if at all. Our ability to generate revenue from product sales from our current or future product candidates also depends on a number of additional factors, including our ability to:

- successfully complete development activities, including the necessary clinical trials;
- complete and submit new drug applications, or NDAs, to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, and obtain regulatory approval for indications for which there is a commercial market;
- complete and submit applications to, and obtain regulatory approval from, foreign regulatory authorities;
- successfully complete all required regulatory agency inspections;
- set a commercially viable price for our products;
- obtain commercial quantities of our products at acceptable cost levels;
- find suitable distribution partners to help us market, sell and distribute our approved products in other markets; and
- obtain coverage and adequate reimbursement from third parties, including government and private payers.

In addition, because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with product development, including that our product candidates may not advance through development or achieve the endpoints of applicable clinical

## [Table of Contents](#)

trials, we are unable to predict the timing or amount of increased expenses, or when or if we will be able to achieve or maintain profitability. Even if we are able to complete the development and regulatory process for any product candidates, we anticipate incurring significant costs associated with commercializing these products.

Even if we are able to generate revenues from the sale of our products, we may not become profitable and may need to obtain additional funding to continue operations. If we fail to become profitable or are unable to sustain profitability on a continuing basis, then we may be unable to continue our operations at planned levels and be forced to reduce our operations.

***We are largely dependent on the success of our two lead product candidates, GR-MD-02 and GM-CT-01 and we cannot be certain that these product candidates will receive regulatory approval or be successfully commercialized.***

We currently have no products for sale and we cannot guarantee that we will ever have any drug products approved for sale. We and our product candidates are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA and comparable regulatory authorities in other countries governing, among other things, research, testing, clinical trials, manufacturing, labeling, promotion, selling, adverse event reporting and recordkeeping. We are not permitted to market any of our product candidates in or outside the United States until we receive approval of a new drug application for a product candidate from the FDA or the equivalent approval from a foreign regulatory authority. Obtaining FDA approval is a lengthy, expensive and uncertain process.

Before obtaining regulatory approval for the sale of any drug candidate, we must conduct extensive pre-clinical studies and clinical trials to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates in humans.

GR-MD-02 our lead product candidate for fibrosis has completed Phase 1 of the human clinical trial phase of drug development in the US and is currently in Phase 2 clinical trials in North America. GR-MD-02 is also currently in an investigator sponsored, human Phase 1B clinical trial being conducted by Providence Portland Medical Center in combination with Yervoy® (ipilimumab) in patients with metastatic melanoma. We cannot assure you that these trials will yield successful results, that they will lead to the generation of revenue, or that we will obtain regulatory approval in other countries.

There are currently no FDA clinical trials ongoing for GM-CT-01.

We filed for an IND with the FDA for GR-MD-02 in January 2013 for initiating human clinical trials in patients with NASH, and the FDA notified us in March 2013 that we may proceed with a Phase 1 clinical trial. Our Phase 1 clinical trial began in July 2013 and was completed in 2014. Pre-clinical studies and clinical trials are expensive, time-consuming and ultimately may not be successful. The results of pre-clinical and initial clinical testing of these products may not necessarily indicate the results that will be obtained from later or more extensive testing. Also, it is possible to suffer significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials, even after obtaining promising results in earlier trials. For example, even though GM-CT-01 progressed successfully through Phase 1 and was progressing successfully through Phase 2 human trials (which were only partially completed due to financing issues in 2010), it may fail in Phase 3 trials or in later stages of development. We will engage others to conduct our clinical trials, including clinical research organizations and, possibly, government-sponsored agencies. Pre-clinical studies and clinical trials may not start or be completed as we forecast and may not achieve the desired results. The time required to obtain FDA and other approvals is unpredictable but often can take years following the commencement of clinical trials, depending upon the complexity of the drug candidate.

***Even if we receive regulatory approval, we may be unable to commercialize our product candidates.***

Even if GR-MD-02, GM-CT-01 and other future product candidates achieve positive results in clinical trials, we may be unable to commercialize them. The availability of government and third party payer reimbursement, and pricing, especially compared to competitor products, could affect our ability to



## [Table of Contents](#)

commercialize our product candidates. Our general inability to obtain necessary regulatory approvals and, if obtained, to commercialize our products would substantially impair our viability.

***There are risks associated with our reliance on third parties to design trial protocols, arrange for and monitor the clinical trials, and collect and analyze data.***

As we develop products eligible for clinical trials, we will contract with independent parties to assist us in the design of the trial protocols, arrange for and monitor the clinical trials, collect data and analyze data. For instance, in 2015, we entered into an agreement with PPD Development, L.P. (PPD) for the purpose of assisting us in the design, development and conduct of one or more clinical research studies from time to time. In accordance with this agreement, PPD is conducting the Phase 1 clinical trial for GR-MD-02 to evaluate the drug's safety in subjects with NASH with advanced hepatic cirrhosis. In addition, certain clinical trials for our products may be conducted by government-sponsored agencies and will be dependent on governmental participation and funding. Additionally, GR-MD-02 is being studied by Providence Portland Medical Center in an Investigator-sponsored IND to conduct a Phase 1B study to determine if GR-MD-02 enhances the probability of melanoma response with ipilimumab by inducing proliferation, activation and memory function of CD8+ T cells in human patients. This study represents a novel approach for patients with metastatic melanoma. The IND was approved by FDA in February 2014.

Our dependence on independent parties and clinical sites involves risks including reduced control over the timing and other aspects of our clinical trials.

***There are risks associated with our reliance on third parties for manufacturing, marketing, sales, managed care and distribution infrastructure and channels.***

We do not have, and do not now intend to develop, facilities for the manufacture of any of our products for clinical or commercial production. At this time, we are not a party to any long-term agreement with any of our suppliers, and accordingly, we have our products manufactured on a purchase-order basis from one of two primary suppliers. We are developing relationships with manufacturers and will enter into collaborative arrangements with licensees or have others manufacture our products on a contract basis. We expect to depend on such collaborators to supply us with products manufactured in compliance with standards imposed by the FDA and foreign regulators.

We have limited experience in marketing, sales or distribution, and we do not intend to develop a sales and marketing infrastructure to commercialize our pharmaceutical products. If we develop commercial products, we will need to rely on licensees, collaborators, joint venture partners or independent distributors to market and sell those products. Thus, we expect that we will be required to enter into agreements with commercial partners to engage in sales, marketing and distribution efforts around our products in development. We may be unable to establish or maintain third-party relationships on a commercially reasonable basis, if at all. In addition, these third parties may have similar or more established relationships with our competitors. If we do not enter into relationships with third parties for the sales and marketing of our proposed products, we will need to develop our own sales and marketing capabilities.

Even if engaged, these distributors may:

- fail to satisfy financial or contractual obligations to us;
- fail to adequately market our products;
- cease operations with little or no notice to us; or
- offer, design, manufacture or promote competing formulations or products.

If we fail to develop sales, managed care, marketing and distribution channels, we would experience delays in generating sales and incur increased costs, which would harm our financial results.

***We are exposed to product liability, pre-clinical and clinical liability risks, which could place a financial burden upon us, should we be sued, because we do not currently have product liability insurance beyond our general insurance coverage.***

Our business exposes us to potential product liability and other liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing and marketing of pharmaceutical formulations and products; accordingly, claims may be asserted against us. In addition, the use in our clinical trials of pharmaceutical formulations and products that our potential collaborators may develop and the subsequent sale of such formulations or products by us or our potential collaborators may cause us to assume a portion of or all of the product liability risks. A successful liability claim or series of claims brought against us could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Because we do not currently have any FDA-approved products or formulations, we do not currently have any product liability insurance covering commercialized products. We may not be able to obtain or maintain adequate product liability insurance on acceptable terms, if at all, or such insurance may not provide adequate coverage against our potential liabilities. Furthermore, our current and potential partners with whom we have collaborative agreements or our future licensees may not be willing to indemnify us against these types of liabilities and may not, themselves, be sufficiently insured or have sufficient liquidity to satisfy any product liability claims. Claims or losses in excess of any product liability insurance coverage that may be obtained by us could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We face intense competition in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries.***

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are intensely competitive. We face direct competition from U.S. and foreign companies focusing on pharmaceutical products, which are rapidly evolving. Our competitors include major multinational pharmaceutical and chemical companies, specialized biotechnology firms and universities and other research institutions. Many of these competitors possess greater financial and other resources, larger research and development staffs and more effective marketing and manufacturing organizations than we possess. In addition, academic and government institutions are increasingly likely to enter into exclusive licensing agreements with commercial enterprises, including our competitors, to market commercial products based on technology developed at such institutions. Our competitors may succeed in developing or licensing technologies and products that are more effective, or succeed in obtaining FDA or other regulatory approvals for product candidates before we do. Acquisitions of, or investments in, competing pharmaceutical or biotechnology companies by large corporations could increase such competitors' financial, marketing, manufacturing and other resources.

***The market for our proposed products is rapidly changing and competitive, and new drugs and new treatments which may be developed by others could impair our ability to maintain and grow our business and remain competitive.***

The pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries are subject to rapid and substantial technological change. Developments by others may render our proposed products noncompetitive or obsolete, or we may be unable to keep pace with technological developments or other market factors. Technological competition from pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, universities, governmental entities and others diversifying into the field is intense and is expected to increase.

As a pre-revenue company engaged in the development of drug technologies, our resources are limited and we may experience technical challenges inherent in such technologies. Competitors have developed or are in the process of developing technologies that are, or in the future may be, the basis for competition. Some of these technologies may have an entirely different approach or means of accomplishing similar therapeutic effects compared to our proposed products. Our competitors may develop drugs that are safer, more effective and less costly than our proposed products and, therefore, present a serious competitive threat to us.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The potential widespread acceptance of therapies that are alternatives to ours may limit market acceptance of our proposed products, even if commercialized. Many of our targeted diseases and conditions may also be treated by other medications. These treatments may be widely accepted in medical communities and have a longer history of use. The established use of these competitive drugs may limit the potential for our technologies, formulations and products to receive widespread acceptance even if commercialized.

### ***Our lack of operating experience may cause us difficulty in managing our growth.***

We have limited experience in manufacturing or procuring products in commercial quantities, conducting other later-stage phases of the regulatory approval process, selling pharmaceutical products, or negotiating, establishing and maintaining strategic relationships. Although we have engaged a number of consultants to assist us, any additional growth may require us to expand our management, operational and financial systems and controls. If we are unable to do so, our business and financial condition would be materially harmed. If rapid growth occurs, it may strain our managerial, operational and financial resources.

### ***We depend on key individuals to develop our products and core technologies and pursue collaborative relationships.***

We are highly dependent on Peter G. Traber, M.D. Dr. Traber is our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Medical Officer who, among other things, designs and leads our pre-clinical and clinical studies, as well as our U.S. and European regulatory processes. The loss of Dr. Traber or failure to attract or retain other key personnel could prevent us from developing our products and core technologies and pursuing collaborative relationships.

### ***We may fail to comply with our reporting and other requirements under federal securities laws.***

As a publicly traded company, we are subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. The Exchange Act requires that we file annual, quarterly and current reports. Our failure to prepare and disclose this information in a timely manner could subject us to penalties under federal securities laws, expose us to lawsuits and restrict our ability to access financing. We may be required to implement additional and expensive finance and accounting systems, procedures and controls as we grow our business and organization to satisfy new reporting requirements, which will increase our costs and require additional management resources.

### ***We are a defendant in a consolidated class action and in a consolidated shareholder derivative action, and these lawsuits and any future such lawsuits may adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows***

We and certain of our officers and directors are defendants in a consolidated federal securities class action lawsuit and a consolidated shareholder derivative action. These lawsuits are described in Part I, Item 3 “Legal Proceedings” in this Form 10-K. These lawsuits were dismissed, with prejudice in January 2016; however, these rulings have been appealed by the plaintiffs. These lawsuits may divert our attention from our ordinary business operations, and we may incur significant expenses associated with their defense (including, without limitation, substantial attorneys’ fees and other fees of professional advisors and potential obligations to indemnify current and former officers and directors who are or may become parties to such actions). Depending on the outcome of the class action lawsuit, we may be required to pay material damages and fines, consent to injunctions on future conduct and/or suffer other penalties, remedies or sanctions. Accordingly, the ultimate resolution of these matters could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition, liquidity and ability to meet our debt obligations and, consequently, could negatively impact the trading price of our common stock. In addition, there is the potential for additional shareholder litigation and for governmental investigations and/or enforcement actions. Any existing or future shareholder lawsuits and any future governmental investigations and/or enforcement actions could adversely impact our reputation, our relationships with our customers and our ability to generate revenue.

## Risks Related to the Regulation of our Products

### *We will need regulatory approvals to commercialize our products.*

We are required to obtain approval (i) from the FDA in order to sell our products in the U.S. and (ii) from foreign regulatory authorities in order to sell our products in other countries. The FDA's review and approval process is lengthy, expensive and uncertain. Extensive pre-clinical and clinical data and supporting information must be submitted to the FDA for each indication for each product candidate in order to secure FDA approval. Before receiving FDA clearance to market our proposed products, we will have to demonstrate that our products are safe on the patient population and effective for the diseases that are to be treated. Clinical trials, manufacturing and marketing of drugs are subject to the rigorous testing and approval process of the FDA and equivalent foreign regulatory authorities. The Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act and other federal, state and foreign statutes and regulations govern and influence the testing, manufacture, labeling, advertising, distribution and promotion of drugs and medical devices. As a result, regulatory approvals can take several years to acquire and may further require the expenditure of substantial financial, managerial and other resources. The FDA could reject an application or, in the alternative, require us to conduct additional clinical or other studies as part of the regulatory review process. Delays in obtaining or failure to obtain FDA approvals would delay or prevent the commercialization of our product candidates, which would prevent, defer or decrease our receipt of revenues. In addition, should we receive initial regulatory approval, our product candidates will be subject to extensive and rigorous ongoing domestic and foreign government regulation.

### *Even if we obtain regulatory approvals, our marketed drugs will be subject to ongoing regulatory review. If we fail to comply with ongoing regulatory requirements, we could lose our approvals to market drugs, in which case our business would be materially adversely affected.*

Following regulatory approval in the United States of any drugs we may develop, we will remain subject to continuing regulatory review, including the review of adverse drug experiences and clinical results that are reported after our drug products are made available to patients. This would include results from any post marketing tests or vigilance required as a condition of approval. The manufacturer and manufacturing facilities we use to make any of our drug products will also be subject to periodic review and inspection by the FDA. The discovery of any new or previously unknown problems with the product, manufacturer or facility may result in restrictions on the drug or manufacturer or facility, including withdrawal of the drug from the market. We would continue to be subject to the FDA requirements governing the labeling, packaging, storage, advertising, promotion, recordkeeping, and submission of safety and other post-market information for all of our product candidates, even those that the FDA had approved. If we fail to comply with applicable continuing regulatory requirements, we may be subject to fines, suspension or withdrawal of regulatory approval, product recalls and seizures, operating restrictions and other adverse consequences.

### *The drug development process to obtain FDA approval is very costly and time consuming and if we cannot complete our clinical trials in a cost-effective manner, our results of operations may be adversely affected.*

Costs and timing of clinical trials may vary significantly over the life of a project owing to the following non-exclusive reasons:

- the duration of the clinical trial;
- the number of sites included in the trials;
- the countries in which the trial is conducted;
- the length of time required and ability to enroll eligible patients;
- the number of patients that participate in the trials;
- the number of doses that patients receive;
- the drop-out or discontinuation rates of patients;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- per patient trial costs;
- third party contractors failing to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner;
- our drug product candidates having different chemical and pharmacological properties in humans than in lab testing;
- the need to suspend or terminate our clinical trials;
- insufficient or inadequate supply or quality of drug product candidates or other necessary materials to conduct our trials;
- potential additional safety monitoring, or other conditions required by FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities regarding the scope or design of our clinical trials, or other studies requested by regulatory agencies;
- problems engaging IRBs to oversee trials or in obtaining and maintaining IRB approval of studies;
- the duration of patient follow-up;
- the efficacy and safety profile of the product candidate;
- the costs and timing of obtaining regulatory approvals; and
- the costs involved in enforcing or defending patent claims or other intellectual property rights.

Each of the above factors and other unanticipated factors beyond our control could prevent us from gaining approval for our drugs in a cost-effective and timely manner, which could have a material adverse impact on our business.

***If users of our proposed products are unable to obtain adequate reimbursement from third-party payers, market acceptance of our proposed products may be limited and we may not achieve revenues or profits.***

The continuing efforts of governments, insurance companies, health maintenance organizations and other payers of healthcare costs to contain or reduce costs of health care may affect our future revenues and profitability as well as the future revenues and profitability of our potential customers, suppliers and collaborative partners in addition to the availability of capital. In other words, our ability to commercialize our proposed products will depend in large part on the extent to which appropriate reimbursement levels for the cost of our proposed formulations, products and related treatments are obtained by the health care providers of these products and treatments. At this time we cannot predict the precise impact of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Affordability Act of 2010, the comprehensive health care reform legislation passed by Congress in March 2010. It is possible that the adoption of this legislation could harm our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Data obtained from clinical trials are not necessarily predictive of future results, may be negative or inconclusive, and are susceptible to varying interpretations, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory clearances.***

Data already obtained, or in the future obtained, from pre-clinical studies and clinical trials do not necessarily predict the results that will be obtained from later pre-clinical studies and clinical trials. Moreover, pre-clinical and clinical data may be negative or inconclusive. In addition, data is susceptible to varying interpretations. Negative or inconclusive data, or data interpreted in various ways, could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials, even after having obtained promising results in earlier trials. Despite the results reported in earlier clinical trials for GR-MD-02, our clinical trials may not demonstrate sufficient levels of safety and efficacy necessary to obtain the requisite regulatory approvals for our drugs, and thus, our proposed drugs may

## [Table of Contents](#)

not be approved for marketing. If later-stage clinical trials do not produce favorable results, our ability to achieve regulatory approval for any of our product candidates may be adversely impacted. The failure to adequately demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of a proposed formulation or product under development could delay or prevent regulatory clearance of the potential drug. The resulting delays in commercialization could materially harm our business.

***Our product candidates may cause undesirable side effects or have other properties that could delay or prevent their regulatory approval, limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or result in significant negative consequences following any marketing approval.***

Undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign regulatory authority. Although we are not currently aware of any undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates, it is possible that they may be identified in the clinical trial process.

As a result of undesirable side effects or safety or toxicity issues that we may experience in our clinical trials, we may not receive approval to market any product candidates, which could prevent us from ever generating revenues or achieving profitability. Results of our trials could reveal an unacceptably high severity and prevalence of side effects. In such an event, our trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development or deny approval of our product candidates for any or all targeted indications. These side effects could affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled subjects to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims.

Additionally, if any of our product candidates receives marketing approval, and we or others later identify undesirable side effects caused by such product, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- we may be forced to suspend marketing of such product;
- regulatory authorities may withdraw their approvals of such product;
- regulatory authorities may require additional warnings on the label that could diminish the usage or otherwise limit the commercial success of such products;
- we may be required to conduct post-market studies;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to subjects or patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the particular product candidate, if approved.

***We will need to obtain FDA approval of any proposed product brand names, and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely impact our business.***

A pharmaceutical product cannot be marketed in the U.S. or other countries until it has completed rigorous and extensive regulatory review processes, including approval of a brand name. Any brand names we intend to use for our product candidates will require approval from the FDA regardless of whether we have secured a formal trademark registration from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or the PTO. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product brand names, including an evaluation of potential for confusion with other product names. The FDA may also object to a product brand name if it believes the name inappropriately implies medical claims. If the FDA objects to any of our proposed product brand names, we may be required to adopt an alternative brand name for our product candidates. If we adopt an alternative brand name, we would lose the

## [Table of Contents](#)

benefit of our existing trademark applications for such product candidate and may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable product brand name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA. We may be unable to build a successful brand identity for a new trademark in a timely manner or at all, which would limit our ability to commercialize our product candidates.

### ***Failure to obtain regulatory approval in international jurisdictions would prevent our product candidates from being marketed abroad.***

In order to market and sell our products in the European Union and many other jurisdictions, we must obtain separate marketing approvals and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements. The approval procedure varies among countries and can involve additional testing. The time required to obtain approval may differ substantially from that required to obtain FDA approval. The regulatory approval process outside the United States generally includes all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA approval. In addition, in many countries outside the United States, it is required that the product be approved for reimbursement before the product can be approved for sale in that country. We may not obtain approvals from regulatory authorities outside the United States on a timely basis, if at all. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions, and approval by one regulatory authority outside the United States does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions or by the FDA. We may not be able to file for marketing approvals and may not receive necessary approvals to commercialize our products in any market. If we are unable to obtain approval of any of our product candidates by regulatory authorities in the European Union or other countries, the commercial prospects of that product candidate may be significantly diminished and our business prospects could decline.

## **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

### ***Our competitive position is contingent upon the protection of our intellectual property.***

Development and protection of our intellectual property are critical to our business. All of our intellectual property, patented or otherwise, has been invented and/or developed by employees or former employees of the Company. Our success depends, in part, on our ability to obtain patent protection for our products or processes in the U.S. and other countries, protect trade secrets and prevent others from infringing on our proprietary rights. We will only be able to protect our product candidates from unauthorized making, using, selling, offering to sell or importation by third parties to the extent that we have rights under valid and enforceable patents or trade secrets that cover these activities. If we do not adequately protect our intellectual property, competitors may be able to practice our technologies.

The patent positions of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies can be highly uncertain and involve complex legal and factual questions for which important legal principles remain unresolved. No consistent policy regarding the breadth of claims allowed in biotechnology patents has emerged to date in the United States. The biotechnology patent situation outside the United States is even more uncertain. Changes in either the patent laws or in interpretations of patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our intellectual property. Accordingly, we cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be allowed in our pending patent applications or enforced in our issued patents or in third-party patents.

The degree of future protection for our proprietary rights is uncertain because legal means afford only limited protection and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

- others may be able to make compounds that are competitive with our product candidates but are not covered by the claims of our patents;
- we might not have been the first to make the inventions covered by our pending patent applications;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- we might not have been the first to file patent applications for these inventions;
- it is possible that our pending patent applications will not result in issued patents;
- we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable; or
- the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business.

We also may rely on trade secrets to protect our technology, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or obtainable. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect. Although we require our scientific and technical employees and consultants to enter into broad assignment of inventions agreements, and all of our employees, consultants and corporate partners with access to proprietary information to enter into confidentiality agreements, these agreements may not be honored. Enforcing a claim that a third party illegally obtained, and is using, our trade secrets is expensive and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, courts outside the United States are sometimes less willing to protect trade secrets. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods and know-how.

***We may incur substantial costs as a result of litigation or other proceedings relating to patent and other intellectual property rights and we may be unable to protect our rights to, or use of, our technology.***

Some or all of our patent applications may not issue as patents, or the claims of any issued patents may not afford meaningful protection for our technologies or products. In addition, patents issued to us or our licensors, if any, may be challenged and subsequently narrowed, invalidated or circumvented. Patent litigation is widespread in the biotechnology industry and could harm our business. Litigation might be necessary to protect our patent position or to determine the scope and validity of third-party proprietary rights.

If we choose to go to court to stop someone else from using the inventions claimed in our patents, that individual or company would have the right to ask the court to rule that such patents are invalid and/or should not be enforced against that third party. These lawsuits are expensive and we may not have the required resources to pursue such litigation or to protect our patent rights. In addition, there is a risk that the court will decide that these patents are not valid and that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the inventions. There is also the risk that, even if the validity of these patents is upheld, the court will refuse to stop the other party on the ground that such other party's activities do not infringe our rights in these patents.

Furthermore, a third party may claim that we are using inventions covered by the third party's patent rights and may go to court to stop us from engaging in our normal operations and activities, including making or selling our product candidates. These lawsuits are costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of managerial and technical personnel. There is a risk that a court would decide that we are infringing the third party's patents and would order us to stop the activities covered by the patents. In addition, there is a risk that a court will order us to pay the other party treble damages for having violated the other party's patents. The biotechnology industry has produced a proliferation of patents, and it is not always clear to industry participants, including us, which patents cover various types of products or methods of use. The coverage of patents is subject to interpretation by the courts, and the interpretation is not always uniform. If we are sued for patent infringement, we would need to demonstrate that our products or methods of use either do not infringe the claims of the relevant patent and/or that the patent claims are invalid, and we may not be able to do this. Proving invalidity in the U.S., in particular, is difficult since it requires a showing of clear and convincing evidence to overcome the presumption of validity enjoyed by issued patents.

Because some patent applications in the United States may be maintained in secrecy until the patents are issued, patent applications in the United States and many foreign jurisdictions are typically not published until eighteen months after filing, and publications in the scientific literature often lag behind actual discoveries, we cannot be certain that others have not filed patent applications for technology covered by our issued patents or our pending applications or that we were the first to invent the technology. Our competitors may have filed, and



## [Table of Contents](#)

may in the future file, patent applications covering technology similar to ours. Any such patent application may have priority over our patent applications and could further require us to obtain rights to issued patents covering such technologies. If another party has filed a United States patent application on inventions similar to ours, we may have to participate in an interference or other proceeding in the PTO or a court to determine priority of invention in the United States. The costs of these proceedings could be substantial, and it is possible that such efforts would be unsuccessful, resulting in a loss of our United States patent position with respect to such inventions.

Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of complex patent litigation more effectively than we can because they have substantially greater resources. In addition, any uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of any litigation could have a material adverse effect on our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our operations.

***Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends upon compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

The PTO and various foreign governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other provisions during the patent process. There are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than would otherwise have been the case.

***Our failure to secure trademark registration could adversely affect our ability to market our product candidates and our business.***

Our trademark applications in the United States, when filed, and any other jurisdictions where we may file may not be allowed for registration, and our registered trademarks may not be maintained or enforced. During trademark registration proceedings, we may receive rejections. Although we are given an opportunity to respond to those rejections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, in the PTO and in comparable agencies in many foreign jurisdictions, third parties are given an opportunity to oppose pending trademark applications and to seek to cancel registered trademarks. Opposition or cancellation proceedings may be filed against our applications and/or registrations, and our applications and/or registrations may not survive such proceedings. Failure to secure such trademark registrations in the United States and in foreign jurisdictions could adversely affect our ability to market our product candidates and our business.

***Confidentiality agreements with employees and others may not adequately prevent disclosure of our trade secrets and other proprietary information and may not adequately protect our intellectual property, which could impede our ability to compete.***

Because we operate in the highly technical field of biotechnology and pharmaceutical development, we rely in part on trade secret protection in order to protect our proprietary trade secrets and unpatented know-how. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect, and we cannot be certain that others will not develop the same or similar technologies on their own. We have taken steps, including entering into confidentiality agreements with all of our employees, consultants and corporate partners to protect our trade secrets and unpatented know-how. These agreements generally require that the other party keep confidential and not disclose to third parties all confidential information developed by the party or made known to the party by us during the course of the party's relationship with us. We also typically obtain agreements from these parties which provide that inventions conceived by the party in the course of rendering services to us will be our exclusive property. However, these agreements may not be honored and may not effectively assign intellectual property rights to us. Enforcing a claim that a party illegally obtained and is using our trade secrets or know-how is difficult, expensive and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, courts outside the United States may be less

## [Table of Contents](#)

willing to protect trade secrets or know-how. The failure to obtain or maintain trade secret protection could adversely affect our competitive position.

***We may be subject to claims that our employees have wrongfully used or disclosed alleged trade secrets of their former employers.***

As is common in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industry, we employ individuals who were previously employed at other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Although no claims against us are currently pending, we may be subject to claims that these employees or we have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former employers. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. Even if we are successful in defending against these claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

### **Risks Related to Our Common Stock**

***The market price of our common stock may be volatile and adversely affected by several factors. This could subject us to securities class action litigation and our stockholders could incur substantial losses.***

The market price of our common stock could fluctuate significantly in response to various factors and events, including but not limited to:

- the results of our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, including interim results, as well as those of our competitors;
- regulatory actions with respect to our products or our competitors' products;
- our ability to integrate operations, technology, products and services;
- our ability to execute our business plan;
- operating results below expectations;
- our issuance of additional securities, including debt or equity or a combination thereof, which may be necessary to fund our operating expenses;
- announcements of technological innovations or new products by us or our competitors;
- the success of competitive products;
- loss of any strategic relationship;
- industry developments, including, without limitation, changes in healthcare policies or practices or third-party reimbursement policies;
- regulatory or legal developments in the United States and other countries;
- the level of expenses related to any of our product candidates or clinical development programs;
- disputes or other developments related to proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters, and our ability to obtain patent protection for our technologies;
- economic and other external factors;
- period-to-period fluctuations in our financial results;
- sales of our common stock by us, our insiders or our other stockholders;
- whether an active trading market in our common stock develops and is maintained; and
- engagement and retention of senior management needed for our clinical trials.

## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition, the market price for securities of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies historically has been highly volatile, and the securities markets have from time to time experienced significant price and volume fluctuations that are unrelated to the operating performance of particular companies. These broad market fluctuations may cause the market price of our common stock to decline substantially.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because biotechnology and biopharmaceutical companies have experienced significant stock price volatility in recent years. As described above, we are currently defending a consolidated federal securities class action lawsuit and a consolidated shareholder derivative action and we may become involved in additional instances of this type of litigation in the future. Litigation often is expensive and diverts management's attention and resources, which could materially and adversely affect our business.

Additionally, fluctuations in the trading price or liquidity of our common stock may materially and adversely affect, among other things, the interest of investors to purchase our common stock on the open market and, generally, our ability to raise capital.

***Our board of directors has the power to designate, without stockholder approval, additional series of preferred stock, the shares of which could be senior to our common stock and be entitled to conversion or voting rights that adversely affect the holders of our common stock.***

Our articles of incorporation authorize the issuance of capital stock including 20,000,000 authorized undesignated shares (8,001,000 designated as of December 31, 2015), and empowers our board of directors to prescribe, by resolution and without stockholder approval, a class or series of undesignated shares, including the number of shares in the class or series and the voting powers, designations, rights, preferences, restrictions and the relative rights in each such class or series. Accordingly, we may designate and issue additional shares or series of preferred stock that would rank senior to the shares of common stock as to dividend rights or rights upon our liquidation, winding-up, or dissolution.

***Nevada law and our charter documents could make it more difficult for a third party to acquire us and discourage a takeover, which could depress the trading price of our common stock.***

Nevada corporate law and our articles of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that could discourage, delay, or prevent a change in control of our Company or changes in our management that our stockholders may deem advantageous. For example, holders of our common stock do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of directors, meaning that stockholders owning a majority of our outstanding shares of common stock will be able to elect all of our directors. In addition, because we have more than 200 stockholders of record, we are subject to the "business combinations" provisions of the Nevada Revised Statutes, or NRS. These provisions could prohibit or delay a merger or other takeover or change in control attempt and, accordingly, may discourage attempts to acquire our Company even though such a transaction may be in our stockholders' best interest and offer our stockholders the opportunity to sell their stock at a price above the prevailing market price.

***One investor and certain directors, by virtue of ownership of our securities and related rights, may be able to control the Company.***

The 10X Fund owns all of our issued and outstanding Series B Preferred Stock, which are convertible into 2,000,000 shares of our common stock. The 10X Fund owns related warrants exercisable to purchase an aggregate of 4,000,000 shares of our common stock. As of December 31, 2015, we have issued 1,388,976 shares of our common stock as dividends on the Series B Preferred Stock and 2,000,000 shares of our common stock on the exercise of warrants by 10X Fund. In addition, James C. Czirr, a managing member of 10X Capital Management, LLC, the general partner of the 10X Fund and one of our directors, owns or controls approximately 902,000 shares of our common stock, including shares of Series A on an as converted basis, and has the right to

## [Table of Contents](#)

acquire approximately 789,000 additional shares of our common stock upon the exercise of outstanding stock options (approximately 526,000 of which are exercisable as of December 31, 2015). As of December 31, 2015 on a fully diluted basis, assuming conversion of all Series B Preferred Stock and exercise of all outstanding warrants, the 10X Fund would own approximately 26% of our then outstanding shares of common stock, which, together with the shares of our common stock that would be owned by Mr. Czirr (assuming exercise of all vested options at that date), would constitute approximately 29% of the then outstanding shares.

As holder of Series B Preferred Stock, the 10X Fund is entitled to elect two directors in a separate class vote, nominate three directors for election by all shares entitled to vote, and provide or withhold consent to a range of fundamental corporate actions we may wish to undertake, such as recapitalization, sale of our Company, and other matters. Such concentration of stock ownership and related rights could have the effect of delaying, deterring or preventing corporate events that our other security holders may desire or consider beneficial to the Company, such as sales of additional securities of the Company needed to fund the ongoing clinical trial program of the Company. In addition to the conversion rights and the right to elect and nominate directors noted above, the 10X Fund, as holder of the Series B Preferred Stock, has certain approval rights, including the right to approve certain financing transactions, as well as the right to participate in certain financing transactions. These rights could negatively impact our ability to raise capital in the future, which could materially and adversely affect our business.

### ***We may issue additional common stock, which might dilute the net tangible book value per share of our common stock.***

Our board of directors has the authority, without action or vote of our stockholders, to issue all or a part of our authorized but unissued shares. Such stock issuances could be made at a price that reflects a discount to, or a premium from, the then-current market price of our common stock. In addition, in order to raise capital, we may need to issue securities that are convertible into or exchangeable for a significant amount of our common stock. We are currently contemplating additional capital raising transactions within the next twelve months, which would likely result in issuances of additional shares which would be dilutive to current shareholders. These issuances would dilute the percentage ownership interest, which would have the effect of reducing your influence on matters on which our stockholders vote, and might dilute the net tangible book value per share of our common stock. You may incur additional dilution if holders of stock options, whether currently outstanding or subsequently granted, exercise their options, or if warrant holders exercise their warrants to purchase shares of our common stock.

### ***A sale of a substantial number of shares of the common stock may cause the price of our common stock to decline.***

Our common stock is currently traded on The NASDAQ Capital Market and, despite certain increases of trading volume from time to time, there have been periods when it could be considered “thinly-traded,” meaning that the number of persons interested in purchasing our common stock at or near bid prices at any given time may be relatively small or non-existent. Finance transactions resulting in a large amount of newly issued shares that become readily tradable, or other events that cause current stockholders to sell shares, could place downward pressure on the trading price of our stock. Some of our shareholders have registration rights to facilitate sales of large blocks of our common stock. We have filed a shelf registration statement to allow registered sales of up to 9.7 million shares by these shareholders. We may consider additional capital raising transactions within the next twelve months, which would likely result in issuances of additional shares which would be dilutive to current shareholders. In addition, the lack of a robust resale market may require a stockholder who desires to sell a large number of shares of common stock to sell the shares in increments over time to mitigate any adverse impact of the sales on the market price of our stock.

If our stockholders sell, or the market perceives that our stockholders intend to sell for various reasons, including the ending of restriction on resale or the expiration of lock-up agreements such as those entered into in

## [Table of Contents](#)

connection with this offering, substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market, including shares issued upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants, the market price of our common stock could fall. Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock may make it more difficult for us to sell equity or equity-related securities in the future at a time and price that we deem reasonable or appropriate. We may become involved in securities class action litigation that could divert management's attention and harm our business.

***We have not paid cash dividends in the past and do not expect to pay cash dividends in the foreseeable future.***

We have never paid cash dividends on our capital stock and do not anticipate paying cash dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future. The payment of dividends on our capital stock will depend on our earnings, financial condition and other business and economic factors affecting us at such time as the board of directors may consider relevant. If we do not pay dividends, our common stock may be less valuable because a return on your investment will only occur if the market price of our common stock price appreciates.

***At times, our shares of common stock and warrants have been thinly traded, so you may be unable to sell at or near ask prices or even at all if you need to sell your shares or warrants to raise money or otherwise desire to liquidate your shares or warrants.***

We cannot predict the extent to which an active public market for our common stock and warrants will develop or be sustained. Our common stock is currently traded on The NASDAQ Capital Market and experiences periods when it could be considered "thinly-traded." This situation may be attributable to a number of factors, including the fact that we are a small company which is relatively unknown to stock analysts, stock brokers, institutional investors and others in the investment community that generate or influence sales volume, and that even if we came to the attention of such persons, they tend to be risk averse and would be reluctant to follow an unproven company such as ours or purchase or recommend the purchase of our shares until such time as we became more seasoned and viable. As a consequence, there may be periods of several days, weeks or months when trading activity in our shares is minimal, as compared to a seasoned issuer which has a large and steady volume of trading activity that will generally support continuous sales without an adverse effect on share price. We cannot give you any assurance that a broader or more active public trading market for our common stock will be sustained, or that current trading levels will be sustained or not diminish.

**Item 1B. *Unresolved Staff Comments***

None.

**Item 2. *Properties***

We lease 3,610 square feet for our executive offices located at 4960 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Norcross, GA. We also lease on a month-to-month basis approximately 300 square feet in Natick, MA, for use by research and development consultants and which is collocated with one of our research and development service vendors. We believe these spaces are suitable for our present operations.

**Item 3. *Legal Proceedings***

From time to time, the Company is exposed to litigation relating to its operations. The Company is not currently engaged in any legal proceedings that are expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a material, adverse effect on its financial condition or results of operations, except as noted below:

*Separation Agreement*

In February 2009, the Company entered into a Separation Agreement in connection with the resignation of David Platt, Ph.D., the Company's former Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors. In July 2014, the Company paid the \$1 million severance obligation.

*Shareholder Class Actions and Derivative Lawsuits*

Between July 30, 2014, and August 6, 2014, three putative class action complaints were filed in the United States District Court for the District of Nevada (the “Nevada District Court”) against the Company and certain of its officers and directors on behalf of all persons who purchased or otherwise acquired the Company’s stock between January 6, 2014 and July 28, 2014. The complaints allege that the defendants made false or misleading statements in certain press releases and other public statements in violation of the federal securities laws and seek class certification, unspecified monetary damages, costs, and attorneys’ fees. The Company disputes the allegations in the complaints and intends to vigorously defend against the claims. On August 22, 2014, the Nevada District Court entered an order consolidating the three cases, relieving the defendants of any obligation to respond to the complaints currently on file, and providing that defendants may respond to a consolidated amended complaint after it is filed by a lead plaintiff(s) to be appointed pursuant to the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. On January 5, 2015, the Nevada District Court granted Defendants’ motion to transfer the consolidated putative securities class action to the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia. On March 24, 2015, the Court appointed a lead plaintiff (“Plaintiff”). Plaintiff filed his Consolidated Class Action Complaint (the “Complaint”) on May 8, 2015. The Complaint asserts claims on behalf of a putative class of all persons who purchased or otherwise acquired the Company’s common stock between October 25, 2013 and July 28, 2014. The Complaint alleges that the Company and certain of its officers and directors (the “Class Action Individual Defendants”) violated Section 1 O(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the “Exchange Act”) and SEC Rule 10b-5 through allegedly false or misleading statements in certain SEC filings, press releases and other public statements. The Complaint further alleges that the Class Action Individual Defendants and one of the Company’s shareholders face liability for the alleged Section 1 O(b) and Rule 10b-5 violations pursuant to Section 20(a) of the Exchange Act. The Complaint seeks class certification, unspecified monetary damages, costs, and attorneys’ fees. The Company disputes the allegations and filed a motion to dismiss the Complaint on June 26, 2015. On December 30, 2015, the Court dismissed the putative class action with prejudice and entered a final judgment in favor of the defendants. Plaintiff has filed a notice of appeal seeking review of the dismissal order and final judgment.

On August 1 and 25, 2014, persons claiming to be Galectin shareholders filed putative shareholder derivative complaints in the Nevada District Court, seeking recovery on behalf of the Company against certain of the Company’s directors and officers. On September 10, 2014, the Nevada District Court entered an order consolidating the two cases, relieving the defendants of any obligation to respond to the initial complaints, and providing that defendants may respond to a consolidated complaint to be filed by the plaintiffs. On January 5, 2015, the Nevada District Court granted Defendants’ motion to transfer the consolidated putative derivative litigation to the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia (hereinafter referred to as the “Georgia Federal Derivative Action.”) The plaintiffs filed a consolidated complaint on February 27, 2015. On April 6, 2015, the Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the consolidated complaint. Rather than respond to those motions, the plaintiffs sought and obtained leave to file an amended complaint. Plaintiffs filed their amended complaint (the “Complaint”) on May 26, 2015. The Complaint alleges that certain of the Company’s directors and officers (the “Derivative Action Individual Defendants”) breached their fiduciary duties to the Company’s shareholders by causing or permitting the Company to make allegedly false and misleading public statements concerning the Company’s financial and business prospects. The Complaint also alleges that the Derivative Action Individual Defendants violated the federal securities laws by allegedly making false or misleading statements of material fact in the Company’s proxy filings, committed waste of corporate assets, were unjustly enriched, and that certain defendants breached their fiduciary duties through allegedly improper sales of Galectin stock. In addition, the Complaint alleges that the Derivative Action Individual Defendants and one of the Company’s shareholders aided and abetted the alleged breaches of fiduciary duties. The Complaint seeks unspecified monetary damages on behalf of the Company, corporate governance reforms, disgorgement of profits, benefits and compensation by the defendants, costs, and attorneys’ and experts’ fees. The Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the Complaint on July 8, 2015. On December 30, 2015, the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia dismissed the Georgia Federal Derivative Action with

prejudice and entered a final judgment in favor of the defendants. Plaintiffs have filed a notice of appeal seeking review of the dismissal order and final judgment.

On August 29, 2014, another alleged Galectin shareholder filed a putative shareholder derivative complaint in state court in Las Vegas, Nevada, seeking recovery on behalf of the Company against the same Galectin directors and officers who are named as defendants in the derivative litigation pending in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. The plaintiff in the Nevada action subsequently filed first and second amended complaints. The second amended complaint alleges claims for breach of fiduciary duties, unjust enrichment, and waste of corporate assets, based on allegations that are substantially similar to those asserted in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action (except that the Nevada action does not allege violations of the federal securities laws and does not assert any claim against the Galectin shareholder named as a defendant in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action), and seeks unspecified monetary damages on behalf of the Company, corporate governance reforms, disgorgement of profits, benefits and compensation by the defendants, costs, and attorneys' and experts' fees. The Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the second amended complaint on April 22, 2015. On April 29, 2015, the plaintiffs in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action filed a motion to intervene in the Nevada action which, among other things, raised questions regarding the Nevada plaintiffs standing. Thereafter, the Nevada plaintiff filed a motion to join additional plaintiffs. At a hearing held on June 11, 2015, the Nevada court: (i) granted the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs' motion to intervene; (ii) directed the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs to file a complaint in intervention; (iii) directed the Nevada plaintiff to file a motion for leave to file a further amended complaint to add additional plaintiffs; (iv) stated that the defendants' motions to dismiss the second amended complaint were denied "at this point;" (v) ordered the Nevada action stayed until December 11, 2015; and (vi) directed the parties to submit a status report on December 11, 2015, updating the court on the progress and status of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. On July 9, 2015, pursuant to the Nevada State Court's instruction, the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs filed a complaint-in-intervention in Nevada State Court, asserting similar claims to the ones they alleged in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action described above. On December 11, 2015, further to the Nevada State Court's instruction, the parties submitted status reports detailing the status of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. On January 5, 2016, the Nevada State Court held a status conference during which the dismissal of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action was discussed. Subsequent to that conference, on January 19, 2016, the defendants filed a motion to dismiss the Nevada State Court litigation based on the dismissal of the similar Georgia Federal Derivative Action, among other grounds. Defendants' motion to dismiss was fully briefed to the Nevada court in February 2016. At a hearing on March 3, 2016, the Nevada State Court granted dismissal of the Nevada State Court litigation pending entry of a final order of dismissal. Once the final order of dismissal is entered, plaintiffs will have 30 days to appeal.

Estimating an amount or range of possible losses resulting from litigation proceedings is inherently difficult and requires an extensive degree of judgment, particularly where the matters involve indeterminate claims for monetary damages, are in the early stages of the proceedings, and are subject to appeal. In addition, because most legal proceedings are resolved over extended periods of time, potential losses are subject to change due to, among other things, new developments, changes in legal strategy, the outcome of intermediate procedural and substantive rulings and other parties' settlement posture and their evaluation of the strength or weakness of their case against us. For these reasons, we are currently unable to predict the ultimate timing or outcome of, or reasonably estimate the possible losses or a range of possible losses resulting from, the matters described above. Based on information currently available, the Company does not believe that any reasonably possible losses arising from currently pending legal matters will be material to the Company's results of operations or financial condition. However, in light of the inherent uncertainties involved in such matters, an adverse outcome in one or more of these matters could materially and adversely affect the Company's financial condition, results of operations or cash flows in any particular reporting period.

**Item 4. *Mine Safety Disclosures***

Not applicable.

**PART II****Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities****Price Range of Common Stock**

Our common stock began trading on The NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol GALT effective March 23, 2012. The high and low sale prices for our common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market, for the periods indicated as shown below. All share prices reflect the one-for-six reverse split, which was effective March 23, 2012.

	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
<b>Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2015</b>		
First Quarter	\$ 4.50	\$3.08
Second Quarter	\$ 4.11	\$2.50
Third Quarter	\$ 3.33	\$1.68
Fourth Quarter	\$ 3.25	\$1.52
<b>Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2014</b>		
First Quarter	\$19.11	\$7.90
Second Quarter	\$16.02	\$9.80
Third Quarter	\$16.55	\$4.28
Fourth Quarter	\$ 5.88	\$3.00

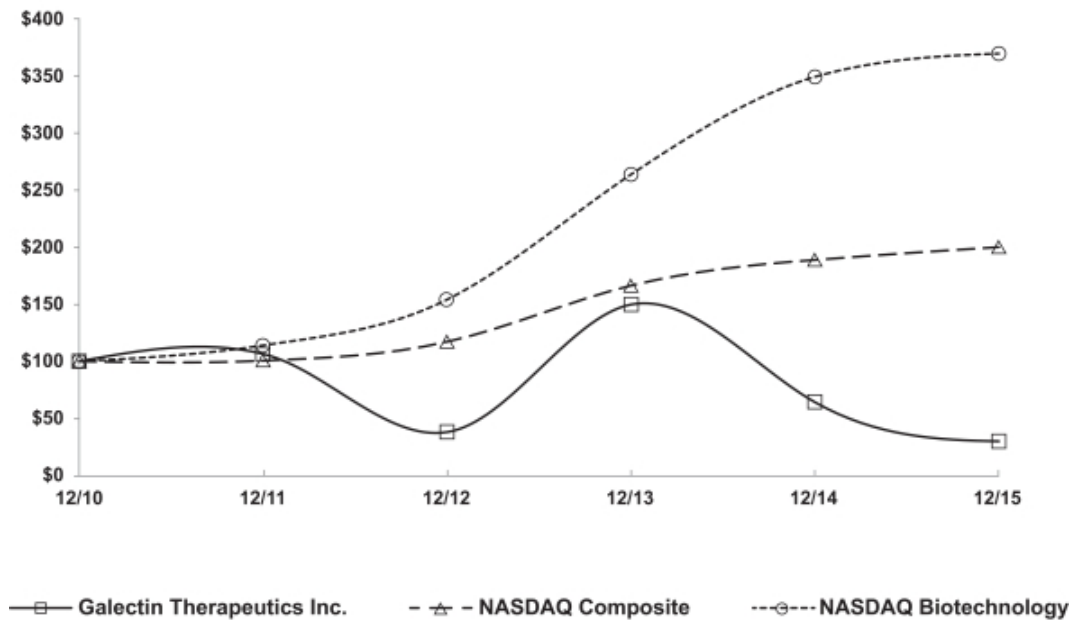


**Performance graph**

The following graph shows the value of an investment of \$100 on December 31, 2010, in each of Galectin Therapeutics common stock, the Nasdaq Biotech Index, the Nasdaq Composite Index. All values assume reinvestment of the pretax value of dividends and are calculated as of December 31 of each year. The historical stock price performance of the Company’s common stock shown in the performance graph is not necessarily indicative of future stock price performance.

**COMPARISON OF 5 YEAR CUMULATIVE TOTAL RETURN\***

Among Galectin Therapeutics Inc., the NASDAQ Composite Index, and the NASDAQ Biotechnology Index



\*\$100 invested on 12/31/10 in stock or index, including reinvestment of dividends.  
Fiscal year ending December 31.

The material in this performance graph is not soliciting material, is not deemed filed with the SEC, and is not incorporated by reference in any filing of the Company under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, whether made on, before or after the date of this filing and irrespective of any general incorporation language in such filing.

**Holder of Common Stock**

As of February 26, 2016, there were 252 shareholders of record of our common stock. Because shares of our common stock are held by depositaries, brokers and other nominees, the number of beneficial holders of our shares is substantially larger than the number of record holders. Based on information available to us, we believe there are approximately 8,900 non-objecting beneficial owners of our shares of our common stock in addition to the record holders.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *Dividends*

There have been no cash dividends declared on our common stock since our Company was formed. Dividends are declared at the sole discretion of our Board of Directors. Our intention is not to declare cash dividends and retain all cash for our operations.

### **Item 6. Selected Financial Data**

<u>Consolidated Statement of Income Data:</u>	Years ended December 31,				
	2015	2014	2013	2012	2011
	(in thousands, except per share data)				
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	\$ 13,114	\$ 8,425	\$ 5,688	\$ 4,527	\$ 3,552
General and administrative	6,965	7,005	6,416	5,372	6,857
Other income (expense)	52	(358)	16	224	(506)
Net loss	(20,027)	(15,788)	(12,088)	(9,675)	(10,915)
Preferred stock dividends	(868)	(943)	(867)	(976)	(1,568)
Preferred stock accretion	(229)	(229)	(229)	(230)	(230)
Warrant modification	—	—	(8,763)	—	—
Net loss applicable to common stockholders	(21,124)	(16,960)	(21,947)	(10,881)	(12,713)
Basic and diluted loss per share	\$ (0.88)	\$ (0.78)	\$ (1.30)	\$ (0.72)	\$ (1.06)
Dividends paid per share	—	—	—	—	—
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:</u>	As of December 31,				
	2015	2014	2013	2012	2011
	(in millions)				
Total assets	\$ 26,408	\$ 29,677	\$ 10,713	\$ 9,561	\$ 6,612
Total debt	—	—	—	—	—
Total stockholders' equity (deficit)	18,040	21,195	1,481	1,165	(2,125)

See Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and the Consolidated Financial Statements and accompanying notes and previously filed Annual Reports on Form 10-K for further information regarding our consolidated results of operations and financial position for periods reported therein and for known factors that will impact comparability of future results.

### **Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

#### **Forward-Looking Statements**

In addition to historical information, the following Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations contains forward-looking statements as defined under Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and is subject to the safe harbor created therein for forward-looking statements. Such statements include, but are not limited to, statements concerning our anticipated operating results, research and development, clinical trials, regulatory proceedings, and financial resources, and can be identified by use of words such as, for example, "anticipate," "estimate," "expect," "project," "intend," "plan," "believe" and "would," "should," "could" or "may." All statements, other than statements of historical facts, included herein that address activities, events, or developments that the Company expects or anticipates will or may occur in the future, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding: plans and expectations regarding clinical trials; plans and expectations regarding regulatory approvals; our strategy and expectations for clinical development and commercialization of our products; potential strategic partnerships; expectations regarding the effectiveness of our products; plans for research and development and related costs; statements about accounting assumptions and estimates; expectations regarding liquidity and the sufficiency of cash to fund currently planned operations through March 31, 2017; our commitments and contingencies; and our

## [Table of Contents](#)

market risk exposure. Forward-looking statements are based on current expectations, estimates and projections about the industry and markets in which Galectin Therapeutics operates, and management's beliefs and assumptions. These statements are not guarantees of future performance and involve certain known and unknown risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied by such statements. Such risks and uncertainties are related to and include, without limitation,

- our early stage of development,
- we have incurred significant operating losses since our inception and cannot assure you that we will generate revenue or profit,
- our dependence on additional outside capital,
- we may be unable to enter into strategic partnerships for the development, commercialization, manufacturing and distribution of our proposed product candidates,
- uncertainties related to any litigation, including shareholder class actions and derivative lawsuits filed,
- uncertainties related to our technology and clinical trials, including expected dates of availability of clinical data,
- we may be unable to demonstrate the efficacy and safety of our developmental product candidates in human trials,
- we may be unable to improve upon, protect and/or enforce our intellectual property,
- we are subject to extensive and costly regulation by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and by foreign regulatory authorities, which must approve our product candidates in development and could restrict the sales and marketing and pricing of such products,
- competition and stock price volatility in the biotechnology industry,
- limited trading volume for our stock, concentration of ownership of our stock, and other risks detailed herein and from time to time in our SEC reports, and

We caution investors that actual results or business conditions may differ materially from those projected or suggested in forward-looking statements as a result of various factors including, but not limited to, those described above and in the Risk Factors section of this annual report on Form 10-K. We cannot assure you that we have identified all the factors that create uncertainties. Moreover, new risks emerge from time to time and it is not possible for our management to predict all risks, nor can we assess the impact of all risks on our business or the extent to which any risk, or combination of risks, may cause actual results to differ from those contained in any forward-looking statements. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. We undertake no obligation to publicly release the result of any revision of these forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date they are made or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events.

## **Overview**

We are a clinical stage biopharmaceutical company engaged in drug research and development to create new therapies for fibrotic disease and cancer. Our drug candidates are based on our method of targeting galectin proteins, which are key mediators of biologic and pathologic functions. We use naturally occurring, readily-available plant materials as starting material in manufacturing processes to create proprietary complex carbohydrates with specific molecular weights and other pharmaceutical properties. These complex carbohydrate molecules are appropriately formulated into acceptable pharmaceutical formulations. Using these unique carbohydrate-based candidate compounds that largely bind and inhibit galectin proteins, particularly galectin-3, we are undertaking the focused pursuit of therapies for indications where galectins have a demonstrated role in the pathogenesis of a given disease. We focus on diseases with serious, life-threatening consequences to patients and those where current treatment options are limited. Our strategy is to establish and implement clinical

## [Table of Contents](#)

development programs that add value to our business in the shortest period of time possible and to seek strategic partners when a program becomes advanced and requires additional resources.

We endeavor to leverage our scientific and product development expertise as well as established relationships with outside sources to achieve cost-effective and efficient development. These outside sources, amongst others, provide us with expertise in preclinical models, pharmaceutical development, toxicology, clinical development, pharmaceutical manufacturing, sophisticated physical and chemical characterization, and commercial development. We also have established several collaborative scientific discovery programs with leading experts in carbohydrate chemistry and characterization. These discovery programs are generally aimed at the targeted development of new carbohydrate molecules which bind galectin proteins and offer alternative options to larger market segments in our primary disease indications, such as subcutaneous or oral administration. We also have established a discovery program aimed at the targeted development of small molecules (non-carbohydrate) which bind galectin proteins and may afford options for alternative means of drug delivery (e.g., oral) and as a result expand the potential uses of our compounds. We are pursuing a development pathway to clinical enhancement and commercialization for our lead compounds in immune enhancement for cancer therapy as well as in both liver fibrosis and fatty liver disease. All of our proposed products are presently in development, including pre-clinical and clinical trials.

### **Our Drug Development Programs**

Galectins are a class of proteins that are made by many cells in the body. As a group, these proteins are able to bind to sugar molecules that are part of other proteins, glycoproteins, in and on the cells of our body. Galectin proteins act as a kind of molecular glue, bringing together molecules that have sugars on them. Galectin proteins, in particular galectin-3, are known to be markedly increased in a number of important diseases including inflammatory diseases, scarring of organs (e.g. liver, lung, kidney, and heart) and cancers of many kinds. The increase in galectin protein promotes the disease and is detrimental to the patient. Published data show that mice lacking the galectin-3 gene, and thus unable to produce galectin-3, are incapable of developing liver fibrosis in response to toxic insult to the liver and in fatty liver disease.

We have one new chemical entity (NCE) in development, GR-MD-02, which has shown promise in preclinical and early clinical studies in treatment of fibrosis and in cancer therapy. Currently we are focusing on development of GR-MD-02 intended to be used in the treatment of liver fibrosis associated with fatty liver disease (NASH), moderate to severe plaque psoriasis, and in cancer therapy in combination with immune-system modifying agent(s). GR-MD-02 is a proprietary, patented compound derived from natural, readily available, plant-based starting materials, which, following chemical processing, exhibits the properties of binding to and inhibiting galectin-3 proteins. A second NCE, GM-CT-01 is a proprietary, patented compound that is made from a completely different starting source plant material and also binds and inhibits galectin proteins. Previously in clinical development for cancer indications, this compound continues to be explored in preclinical studies.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our product pipeline is shown below:

<u>Indication</u>	<u>Drug</u>	<u>Status</u>
<b>Fibrosis</b>		
NASH with Advanced Fibrosis: NASH-CX trial and NASH-FX trial	GR-MD-02	IND submitted January 2013. Results from the Phase 1 clinical trial were reported in 2014, with final results reported in January 2015. End of Phase 1 meeting held with FDA in 2014. Two Phase 2 clinical trials are being conducted. The NASH CX trial, is designed for patients with cirrhosis, and the NASH FX trial is designed for patients with advanced fibrosis but not cirrhosis. The NASH FX trial top line data is expected around end of Q3-2016 and the NASH CX trial top line data is expected around the end of 2017.
Lung Fibrosis	GR-MD-02	In pre-clinical development
Kidney Fibrosis	GR-MD-02	In pre-clinical development
Cardiac and Vascular Fibrosis	GR-MD-02 and GM-CT-01	In pre-clinical development
<b>Cancer Immunotherapy</b>		
Melanoma	GR-MD-02	Investigator IND submitted in December 2013. Phase 1B study in process. A second Phase 1B study is planned to begin in 1Q-2016. Investigator IND for that study submitted in September 2015.
<b>Psoriasis</b>		
Moderate to Severe Plaque Psoriasis	GR-MD-02	IND submitted March 2015. A phase 2a trial in moderate to severe plaque psoriasis patients began in January 2016. Data is expected around Q3-2016.

*Fibrosis.* GR-MD-02 is our lead product candidate for treatment of fibrotic disease. Our preclinical data show that GR-MD-02 has a significant therapeutic effect on liver fibrosis as shown in several relevant animal models. In addition, in NASH animal models GR-MD-02 has been shown to reduce liver fat, inflammation, and ballooning degeneration or death of liver cells. Therefore, we chose GR-MD-02 as the lead candidate in a development program targeted initially at fibrotic liver disease associated with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH, or fatty liver disease). In January 2013, an Investigational New Drug (“IND”) was submitted to the FDA with the goal of initiating a Phase 1 study in patients with NASH and advanced liver fibrosis to evaluate the human safety of GR-MD-02 and pharmacodynamics biomarkers of disease. On March 1, 2013, the FDA indicated we could proceed with a US Phase 1 clinical trial for GR-MD-02 with a development program aimed at obtaining support for a proposed indication of GR-MD-02 for treatment of NASH with advanced fibrosis. The Phase 1 trial was completed and demonstrated that GR-MD-02 up to 8 mg/Kg, i.v. was safe and well tolerated and the human pharmacokinetic data defined a drug dose for use in the planned Phase 2 trials. Additionally, there was evidence of a pharmacodynamic effect of GR-MD-02 at the 8 mg/kg dose with a decrease in alpha 2 macroglobulin, a serum marker of fibrotic activity, and a reduction in liver stiffness as determined by FibroScan®. An “End of Phase 1 Meeting” was held with FDA which, amongst other items, provided guidance on the primary endpoint for the Phase 2 clinical trial.

Additionally, an open label drug-drug interaction study was completed during the second quarter of 2015 with GR-MD-02 and it showed that with 8 mg/kg dose of GR-MD-02 and 2 mg/kg dose of midazolam there was

## [Table of Contents](#)

no drug-drug interaction and no serious adverse events or drug-related adverse events were observed. This study was required by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the primary objective was to determine if single or multiple intravenous (IV) doses of GR-MD-02 affect the pharmacokinetics (PK) of midazolam. The secondary objective was to assess the safety and tolerability of GR-MD-02 when administered concomitantly with midazolam. The lack of a drug interaction in this study enables Galectin to expand the number of patients eligible for its Phase 2 clinical trial. In addition, should GR-MD-02 be approved for marketing, the success of this study supports a broader patient population for the drug label.

Our Phase 2 program in fibrotic disease consists of two separate human clinical trials. The first clinical trial is the NASH-CX study for patients with NASH with cirrhosis, which began enrolling in June 2015. This study is a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, parallel-group Phase 2 trial to evaluate the safety and efficacy of GR-MD-02 for the treatment of liver fibrosis and resultant portal hypertension in patients with NASH cirrhosis. A total of 156 patients at approximately 50 sites in the United States will be randomized to receive either 2 mg/kg of GR-MD-02, 8 mg/kg of GR-MD-02 or placebo, with 52 patients in each group. The primary endpoint is a reduction in change in hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG). Patients will receive an infusion every other week for one year, total of 26 infusions, and will be evaluated to determine the change in HVPG as compared with placebo. HVPG will be correlated with secondary endpoints of fibrosis on liver biopsy as well as with measurement of liver stiffness (FibroScan<sup>®</sup>) and assessment of liver metabolism (<sup>13</sup>C-methacetin breath test, Exalenz), which are non-invasive measures of the liver that may be used in future studies. Data readout is expected by the end of 2017.

The second clinical trial is the NASH-FX for patients with NASH advanced fibrosis uses a variety of non-invasive fibrosis assessment technologies. The first patient in this 30 patient study is was consented in September 2015, and the study is designed for 15 patients receiving 8 mg/kg of GR-MD-02 and 15 receiving placebo to be treated. That study will evaluate the safety and efficacy of GR-MD-02 for a four month treatment period of bi-weekly infusions of GR-MD-02 on non-invasive measures on liver stiffness as assessed imaging of liver fibrosis using multi-parametric magnetic resonance imaging (LiverMultiScan<sup>®</sup>, Perspectum Diagnostics), as the primary endpoint, as well as magnetic resonance-elastography and FibroScan score, as secondary endpoints. Top-line data is expected to be available in the third quarter of 2016.

Our drug candidate provides a promising new approach for the therapy of fibrotic diseases, and liver fibrosis in particular. Fibrosis is the formation of excess connective tissue (collagen and other proteins plus cellular elements such as myofibroblasts) in response to damage, inflammation or repair. When the fibrotic tissue becomes confluent, it obliterates the cellular architecture, leading to scarring and dysfunction of the underlying organ. Given galectin-3's broad biological functionality, it has been demonstrated to be involved in cancer, inflammation and fibrosis, heart disease, renal disease and stroke. We have further demonstrated the broad applicability of the actions of our galectin-3 inhibitor's biological effect in ameliorating fibrosis involving lung, kidney and cardiac tissues in a variety of animal models.

The focus and goal of the therapeutic program is to stop the progression of and reverse the fibrosis in the liver and, thereby improve liver function and prevent the development of complications of fibrosis/cirrhosis and liver-related mortality in patients.

*Cancer Immunotherapy.* We believe there is potential for galectin inhibition to play a key role in the burgeoning area of cancer immunotherapy. For example, there have been several recent approvals of drugs that enhance a patient's immune system to fight cancer. With many additional vaccines and immune stimulatory agents in development, industry analysts forecast that this market could generate over \$35 billion in sales over the next 10 years. It is our goal to use a galectin inhibitor to enhance the immune system function to fight cancer in a way that complements other approaches to this type of therapy. Our drug candidates provide a promising new therapeutic approach to enhance the activity of the immune system against cancer cells. Preclinical studies have indicated that GR-MD-02 enhances the immune response to cancer cells, increased tumor shrinkage and enhanced survival in immune competent mice with prostate, breast, melanoma and sarcoma cancers when

## [Table of Contents](#)

combined with one of the immune checkpoint inhibitors, anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1. These preclinical data led to the filing of an Investigator-sponsored IND and the initiation of a study of GR-MD-02 in combination with Yervoy® (ipilimumab) in a Phase 1B study of patients with metastatic melanoma. This study is being conducted under the sponsorship of Providence Portland Medical Center's Earle A. Chiles Research Institute (EACRI). A study with Keytruda and GRMD-02 is conducted by EACRI is expected to begin enrolling by April 2016.

We believe the mechanism of action for GR-MD-02 is based upon interaction with, and inhibition of, galectin proteins, particularly galectin-3, which are expressed at high levels in certain pathological states including inflammation, fibrosis and cancer. While GR-MD-02 is capable of binding to multiple galectin proteins, we believe that it has the greatest affinity for galectin-3, the most prominent galectin implicated in pathological processes. Blocking galectin in cancer and liver fibrosis has specific salutary effects on the disease process, as discussed below.

*Psoriasis.* During our Phase 1 NASH fibrosis trial with GR-MD-02, a clinical effect on plaque psoriasis was observed in a NASH patient who also had this disease. This patient had marked improvement in her psoriasis, with improvement beginning after the third infusion. She reported that her psoriasis was "completely gone" and her skin was "normal" after the fourth infusion. Her skin remained normal for 17 months after the final infusion of study drug. The patient is convinced that the improvement in her psoriasis is related to the study drug.

This serendipitous finding, combined with galectin-3 protein being markedly upregulated in the capillary epithelia (small blood vessels) of the psoriatic dermis (plaque lesions), led to a phase 2a trial in patients with moderate to severe plaque psoriasis. GR-MD-02 inhibition of galectin-3 may attenuate capillary changes in the psoriatic dermis and inflammatory recruitment, perhaps explaining the improvements observed in the NASH fibrosis trial patient. In this open-label, unblinded trial (no placebo, all patients knowingly receive active drug), 10 patients with moderate to severe plaque psoriasis are administered GR-MD-02 every two weeks for 12 weeks. We anticipate top line data for this trial by the end of the third quarter of 2016.

## Results of Operations from the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

### Research and Development Expense

	Year ended December 31,		2015 as Compared to 2014	
	2015	2014	\$ Change	% Change
Research and development	\$13,114	\$8,425	\$ 4,689	56%

We generally categorize research and development expenses as either direct external expenses, comprised of amounts paid to third party vendors for services, or all other research and development expenses, comprised of employee payroll and general overhead allocable to research and development. We consider a clinical program to have begun upon acceptance by the FDA, or similar agency outside of the United States, to commence a clinical trial in humans, at which time we begin tracking expenditures by the product candidate. Clinical program expenses comprise payments to vendors related to preparation for, and conduct of, all phases of the clinical trial, including costs for drug manufacture, patient dosing and monitoring, data collection and management, oversight of the trials and reports of results. Pre-clinical expenses comprise all research and development amounts incurred before human trials begin, including payments to vendors for services related to product experiments and discovery, toxicology, pharmacology, metabolism and efficacy studies, as well as manufacturing process development for a drug candidate.

We have two product candidates, GR-MD-02 and GM-CT-01; however only GR-MD-02 is in active development. We filed for an IND for GR-MD-02 in January 2013 and in February 2013 we entered into an agreement with CTI to conduct a Phase 1 clinical trial of GR-MD-02. In March 2013, the FDA indicated we

## [Table of Contents](#)

could proceed with a Phase 1 human clinical trial of GR-MD-02, and we began enrolling patients in the third quarter of 2013. In January 2014, we completed the enrollment of the first cohort of patients in the Phase 1 trial with no serious adverse events being reported. We reported initial safety and tolerability results from the first cohort of patients on March 31, 2014. The second cohort of this Phase 1 trial began and enrollment was completed in April 2014. In July 2014, we reported the results from the second cohort of patients. Enrollment of the third cohort of Phase 1 began in July 2014 with interim results presented in November 2014 with the final report on cohort 3 presented in January 2015. The results of the Phase 1 study demonstrate that (i) GR-MD-02 was safe and well tolerated by patients with advanced NASH liver fibrosis after IV administration of four doses of 2 mg/kg, 4 mg/kg and 8mg/kg lean body weight, (ii) Pharmacokinetics revealed drug exposure in humans at the 8 mg/kg dose that was equivalent to the upper range of the targeted therapeutic dose determined from effective doses in NASH animal models, (iii) Disease Serum Marker Effect showed there was a statistically significant, dose-dependent reduction in FibroTest<sup>®</sup> scores due to a statistically significant reduction in alpha-2 macroglobulin (A2M) serum levels, and (iv) Liver Stiffness Effect, as measured by FibroScan<sup>®</sup> showed that there was a signal of reduced liver stiffness in patients receiving GR-MD-02. The reduction seen in A2M does *not* necessarily mean fibrosis got better in this short study, but does suggest changes in the fibrogenic process that might lead to an improvement in fibrosis with longer-term therapy. These Phase 1 results in NASH patients with advanced fibrosis provide a firm foundation for entry into a Phase 2 development program.

The Company held an “End of Phase 1 meeting” with the FDA and, amongst other things, received guidance on the primary endpoints for a Phase 2 trial. In Phase 2 we are exploring two indications, NASH cirrhosis and NASH with advanced fibrosis. The NASH-CX trial is designed to target a patient population with cirrhosis due to NASH. The study endpoints will include those that are closely associated with outcomes in patients with cirrhosis with the primary endpoint: chosen as hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG). HVPG is reflective of portal pressure and portal hypertension is responsible for most of the complications resulting from cirrhosis; a reduction in HVPG is associated with a reduction in complications of cirrhosis and reduced mortality. Planned secondary endpoints include: morphometric analysis of collagen on liver biopsies, a change in histopathological stage, and other secondary endpoints will include non-invasive tests to evaluate for correlation with HVPG and liver collagen. We have awarded the contract for the NASH-CX trial to a CRO, PPD Development, L.P., and enrollment began in June 2015 to assess the efficacy of GR-MD-02 in patients with NASH cirrhosis. On March 11, 2016, we entered into a Project Addendum Modification with PPD Development, L.P. (“PPD”) amending our Project Addendum to Master Services Agreement for clinical management services, which we entered into on March 6, 2015. Pursuant to the Project Addendum Modification, the parties have revised the timeline, the budget and payment schedule for the trial. Under the revised budget, Galectin will pay PPD to a sum anticipated not to exceed approximately \$22,746,691 (increased from \$14,941,804), consisting of direct fees of \$9,084,692 (increased from \$8,866,490) and pass through costs estimated at \$13,661,998 (increased from \$6,075,313). The primary reasons for the increase are to reflect actual costs related to the treatment of the patients which were estimated in the original Project Addendum and for costs related to the evaluation of the endpoints in the trial which were not determined at the time of and therefore not included in the original Project Addendum. The foregoing description of the Project Addendum Modification is a summary only and is qualified by reference to the full text of the Project Addendum. The Project Addendum Modification is attached hereto as Exhibit 10.50 and is incorporated herein by reference. The timing of initial results from the NASH-CX are dependent upon the rate of patient enrollment, amongst other factors, but we anticipate top line results around the end of 2017. In the indication of NASH with advanced fibrosis, we are conducting a single site, placebo controlled, randomized clinical trial (NASH-FX) to evaluate 4 months of treatment on patients with stage 3 bridging fibrosis. This trial was initiated in the third quarter of 2015 with top line results expected to be available around the end of the third quarter of 2016. Our Phase 2 clinical program is designed to position the Company for a strong Phase 3 clinical trial program.

Additionally, during the Phase 1 clinical trial, there appeared to be a potential beneficial effect on at least one patient’s moderate to severe psoriasis. As a result, we are conducting a single site, 10 patient, open label clinical trial with GR-MD-02 to determine whether more extensive studies in this indication are warranted. Enrollment of patients in this trial began in January 2016.



## [Table of Contents](#)

An open label drug-drug interaction study was completed with GR-MD-02 and it showed that with 8 mg/kg dose of GR-MD-02 and 2 mg/kg dose of midazolam there was no drug-drug interaction and no serious adverse events or drug-related adverse events were observed. This study was required by the FDA and the primary objective was to determine if single or multiple intravenous (IV) doses of GR-MD-02 affect the pharmacokinetics (PK) of midazolam. The secondary objective was to assess the safety and tolerability of GR-MD-02 when administered concomitantly with midazolam. The lack of a drug interaction in this study enables Galectin to expand the number of patients eligible for its Phase 2 clinical trial. In addition, should GR-MD-02 be approved for marketing, the success of this study supports a broader patient population for the drug label.

Based on guidance from FDA and in furtherance of its understanding of the GR-MD-02 molecule, we continue to enhance its chemistry, manufacturing and control procedures on GR-MD-02 active pharmaceutical ingredient (API) as well as on the finished, sterile, pharmaceutical dosage form. Various state of the art and cutting-edge analytical technologies are being utilized, for example, to characterize and quantify the backbone vs. side-chain constituents and their quantitation, use of sophisticated linkage analysis with 2-D NMR to provide both qualitative and quantitative information on the proportion of oligomers, degree of methylation, as well as other monoclonal specific antibody techniques to map GR oligomer integrity and distribution. The Company has also characterized how the GR molecule behaves under conditions of forced degradation.

Our research and development expenses were as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Direct external expenses:		
Clinical programs	\$ 9,177	\$3,572
Pre-clinical activities	1,531	2,499
Other research and development expenses:		
Payroll and other including stock based compensation	2,406	2,354
	<u>\$13,114</u>	<u>\$8,425</u>

Clinical programs expenses increased primarily due to costs related to our Phase 2 clinical trials during the year ended December 31, 2015 as compared to the same period in 2014. As we continue enroll patients in the Phase 2 trials we expect our clinical activities costs will increase and may fluctuate from quarter to quarter as the trial progresses. Pre-clinical activities decreased primarily because we have completed pre-clinical work directly related to our Phase 2 clinical trial program. Payroll and other expenses increased in 2015 over 2014 primarily due to the hiring of the executive director of clinical development in 2015 offset by lower stock based compensation expense in 2015.

Both the time required and costs we may incur in order to commercialize a drug candidate that would result in material net cash inflow are subject to numerous variables, and therefore we are unable at this stage of our development to forecast useful estimates. Variables that make estimates difficult include the number of clinical trials we may undertake, the number of patients needed to participate in the clinical trial, patient recruitment uncertainties, trial results as to the safety and efficacy of our products, and uncertainties as to the regulatory agency response to our trial data prior to receipt of marketing approval. Moreover, the FDA or other regulatory agencies may suspend clinical trials if we or an agency believes patients in the trial are subject to unacceptable risks, or find deficiencies in the conduct of the clinical trial. Delays or rejections may also occur if governmental regulation or policy changes during our clinical trials or in the course of review of our clinical data. Due to these uncertainties, accurate and meaningful estimates of the ultimate cost to bring a product to market, the timing of costs and completion of our program and the period during which material net cash inflows will commence are unavailable at this time.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *General and Administrative Expense*

	Year ended December 31,		2015 as Compared to 2014	
	2015	2014	\$ Change	% Change
General and administrative	\$6,965	\$7,005	\$ (40)	(1)%

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries including stock based compensation, legal and accounting fees, insurance, investor relations, business development and other office related expenses. The primary reasons for the decrease for the year ended December 31, 2015 as compared to the same period for 2014 are due to, decreased legal expenses of \$340,000, decreased stock based compensation of \$457,000 offset by increases in investor relations activities of \$278,000 and increases in insurance of \$194,000.

### *Other Income and Expense*

During the year ended December 31, 2015, other income and expense consisted of interest income.

## **Results of Operations from the Years Ended December 31, 2014 and 2013**

### *Research and Development Expense*

	Year ended December 31,		2014 as Compared to 2013	
	2014	2013	\$ Change	% Change
Research and development	\$8,425	\$5,688	\$ 2,737	48%

Our research and development expenses were as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2014	2013
Direct external expenses:		
Clinical programs	\$3,572	\$2,235
Pre-clinical activities	2,499	1,701
Other research and development expenses:		
Payroll and other, including stock based compensation	2,354	1,752
	<u>\$8,425</u>	<u>\$5,688</u>

Clinical programs and pre-clinical expenses cost increases for the year ended December 31, 2014, compared to the same period in 2013, were due to increases in costs related to our Phase 1 clinical trial of \$367,000 and drug manufacturing costs of \$970,000. Pre-clinical activities increase is related to activities to support our planned Phase 2 program. We have completed our Phase 1 trial for GR-MD-02 and are preparing for our Phase 2 program, and expect our clinical and pre-clinical program costs will increase substantially.

Both the time required and costs we may incur in order to commercialize a drug candidate that would result in material net cash inflow are subject to numerous variables, and therefore we are unable at this stage of our development to forecast useful estimates. Variables that make estimates difficult include the number of clinical trials we may undertake, the number of patients needed to participate in the clinical trial, patient recruitment uncertainties, trial results as to the safety and efficacy of our product, and uncertainties as to the regulatory agency response to our trial data prior to receipt of marketing approval. Moreover, the FDA or other regulatory

## [Table of Contents](#)

agencies may suspend clinical trials if we or an agency believes patients in the trial are subject to unacceptable risks, or find deficiencies in the conduct of the clinical trial. Delays or rejections may also occur if governmental regulation or policy changes during our clinical trials or in the course of review of our clinical data. Due to these uncertainties, accurate and meaningful estimates of the ultimate cost to bring a product to market, the timing of costs and completion of our program and the period during which material net cash inflows will commence are unavailable at this time. However, we expect to continue to have substantial research and development expenses for the foreseeable future as we continue to develop our products.

### **General and Administrative Expense**

	Year ended December 31,		2014 as Compared to 2013	
	2014	2013	\$ Change	% Change
General and administrative	\$7,005	\$6,416	\$ 589	9%

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries including stock based compensation, legal and accounting fees, insurance, investor relations, business development and other office related expenses. The primary reasons for the increase for the year ended December 31, 2014 as compared to the same period for 2013 are due to, increased legal expenses of \$407,000 related to our arbitration with Dr. Platt which was settled in 2014 and includes the \$150,000 retention of legal fees we paid in connection with the shareholder suits filed in 2014 and increased insurance expense of \$115,000.

### **Other Income and Expense**

During the year ended December 31, 2014, other income and expense consisted primarily of the \$400,000 loss on equity method investment in Galectin Sciences LLC.

### **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

As described above in the Overview and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, we are in the development stage and have not generated any revenues to date. Since our inception on July 10, 2000, we have financed our operations from proceeds of public and private offerings of debt and equity. As of December 31, 2015, we raised a net total of \$122.5 million from these offerings. At December 31, 2015, the Company had \$25.8 of unrestricted cash and cash equivalents available to fund future operations. The Company currently believes there is sufficient cash to fund currently planned operations through March 31, 2017. We will require more cash to fund our operations after March 31, 2017 and believe we will be able to obtain additional financing. However, there can be no assurance that we will be successful in obtaining such new financing or, if available, that such financing will be on terms favorable to us. If we are unsuccessful in raising additional capital to fund operations before March 31, 2017, we may be required to cease operations or seek bankruptcy protection.

#### *2015 compared to 2014*

Net cash used in operations increased by \$4,557,000 to \$16,983,000 for 2015, as compared to \$12,426,000 for 2014. Cash operating expenses increased principally due to increased research and development activities primarily related to our Phase 2 clinical programs.

There were no equipment purchases or other investing activities in 2015.

Net cash provided by financing activities was \$13,701,000 during 2015 as compared to \$31,465,000 during 2014, due primarily to the transactions described below.

In 2015, we completed an offering of common stock and warrants for net proceeds of \$9,129,000 and \$4,572,000 from sales of our common stock through At the Market issuances. In 2014, we received \$2,128,000 from the exercise of stock options and warrants. Additionally, in 2014, we received \$29,337,000 from sales of our common stock through At the Market issuances.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 2014 compared to 2013

Net cash used in operations increased by \$4,942,000 to \$12,426,000 for 2014, as compared to \$7,484,000 for 2013. Cash operating expenses increased principally due to increased research and development activities primarily related to our fibrosis development and Phase 1 clinical trial for GR-MD-02 begun in 2013.

There were no equipment purchases or other investing activities in 2014.

Net cash provided by financing activities was \$31,465,000 during 2014 as compared to \$8,609,000 during 2013, due primarily to the transactions described below.

In 2014, we received \$2,128,000 from the exercise of stock options and warrants. Additionally, in 2014, we received \$29,337,000 from sales of our common stock through At the Market issuances. In 2013, we received \$4,776,000 from the exercise of stock options and warrants. Additionally, in 2013, we received \$3,000,000 from a private placement of unregistered common stock and received \$833,000 in net proceeds from our at the market stock issuance program.

#### **Operating leases.**

In September 2012, the Company entered into an operating lease for office space in Norcross, GA for a term of twenty-six months, beginning on October 1, 2012 and ending November 30, 2014 at a rate of approximately \$3,000 per month. In June 2014, the Company signed an amendment to the lease extending the term through November 30, 2017 with a base monthly rental of approximately \$3,300 through the extended term. The original lease provided for free rent for the first two months of the lease and required a security deposit of \$6,000. In addition to base rental payments included in the contractual obligations table above, the Company is responsible for our pro-rata share of the operating expenses for the building.

In October 2012, the Company entered into an operating lease for office space collocated with lab space for research and development activities. The lease is for a period of one year, beginning on October 1, 2012, for a rate of \$15,000 for the term, payable in equal monthly increments. This lease was continued on a month to month basis from October 1, 2013.

**Other.** We have engaged outside vendors for certain services associated with our clinical trials. These services are generally available from several providers and, accordingly, our arrangements are typically cancellable on 30 days notice.

#### **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We have not created, and are not a party to, any special-purpose or off-balance sheet entities for the purpose of raising capital, incurring debt or operating parts of our business that are not consolidated into our financial statements. We do not have any arrangements or relationships with entities that are not consolidated into our financial statements that are reasonably likely to materially affect our liquidity or the availability of capital resources.

#### **Contractual Obligations and Commitments**

The following table summarizes contractual obligations and commitments as of December 31, 2015:

<u>Contractual Obligations</u>	<u>Payments due by period (in thousands)</u>				
	<u>Total</u>	<u>Less than 1 year</u>	<u>1-3 years</u>	<u>3-5 years</u>	<u>More than 5 years</u>
Operating Leases	\$ 81	\$ 40	\$ 41		
Total	\$ 81	\$ 40	\$ 41		

#### **Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

Our significant accounting policies are more fully described in Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K. Certain of our accounting policies, however,

## [Table of Contents](#)

are critical to the portrayal of our financial position and results of operations and require the application of significant judgment by our management, which subjects them to an inherent degree of uncertainty. In applying our accounting policies, our management uses its best judgment to determine the appropriate assumptions to be used in the determination of certain estimates. Our more significant estimates include stock option and warrant liability valuations and performance vesting features of certain of these instruments, useful lives and potential impairment of property and equipment and intangible assets, accrued liabilities, deferred income taxes and cash flow. These estimates are based on our historical experience, terms of existing contracts, our observance of trends in the industry, information available from other outside sources, and on various other factors that we believe to be appropriate under the circumstances. We believe that the critical accounting policies discussed below involve more complex management judgment due to the sensitivity of the methods, assumptions and estimates necessary in determining the related asset, liability, revenue and expense amounts.

*Accrued Expenses.* As part of the process of preparing our consolidated financial statements, we are required to estimate accrued expenses. This process involves identifying services that third parties have performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred on these services as of each balance sheet date in our consolidated financial statements. Examples of estimated accrued expenses include contract service fees in conjunction with pre-clinical and clinical trials, professional service fees, such as those arising from the services of attorneys and accountants and accrued payroll expenses. In connection with these service fees, our estimates are most affected by our understanding of the status and timing of services provided relative to the actual services incurred by the service providers. In the event that we do not identify certain costs that have been incurred or we under- or over-estimate the level of services or costs of such services, our reported expenses for a reporting period could be understated or overstated. The date on which certain services commence, the level of services performed on or before a given date, and the cost of services are often subject to our judgment. We make these judgments based upon the facts and circumstances known to us in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S.

*Research and Development Expenses.* Costs associated with research and development are expensed as incurred. Research and development expenses include, among other costs, salaries and other personnel-related costs, and costs incurred by outside laboratories and other accredited facilities in connection with clinical trials and preclinical studies.

*Stock-Based Compensation.* Stock-based compensation cost is measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and is recognized as expense over the service period, which generally represents the vesting period. For awards that have performance based vesting conditions the Company recognizes the expense over the estimated period that the awards are expected to be earned. The Company generally uses the Black-Scholes option-pricing model to calculate the grant date fair value of stock options. For options that only vest upon the achievement of market conditions, the Company values the options using a Monte Carlo model to calculate the grant date fair value of the stock options. The expense related to options that vest based on market conditions is not reversed should those options not ultimately vest. The expense recognized over the service period is required to include an estimate of the awards that will be forfeited. Stock options issued to non-employees are accounted for in accordance with the provisions of ASC Subtopic 505-50, Equity-Based Payments to Non-employees, which requires valuing the stock options using an option pricing model (the Company uses Black-Scholes) and measuring such stock options to their current fair value when they vest.

### **Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk**

Due to the nature of our operations, assets and absence of debt, we are not exposed to any significant market risks at December 31, 2015 and 2014.

### **Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data**

The financial statements required by this item are attached to this Annual Report on Form 10-K beginning on Page F-1.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure**

None.

### **Item 9A. Controls and Procedures**

#### *(a) Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures*

As required by Rule 13a-15 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, (the “Exchange Act”) as of the end of the period covered by this Annual Report, we carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of December 31, 2015. Our management has concluded, based on their evaluation, that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of December 31, 2015 to ensure that information required to be disclosed by us in the reports we file or submit under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission’s rules and forms.

#### *(b) Management’s Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*

Management of the Company is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. As defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act, internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, a company’s principal executive and principal financial officers and effected by a company’s board of directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. It includes those policies and procedures that:

- a) Pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company;
- b) Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of a company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and the board of directors of the Company; and
- c) Provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company’s assets that could have a material effect on its financial statements.

Because of the inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

The Company’s management has used the criteria established in “Internal Control-Integrated Framework” issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework), or COSO, to evaluate the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Management has selected the COSO 2013 framework for its evaluation as it is a control framework recognized by the SEC and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, that is free from bias, permits reasonably consistent qualitative and quantitative measurement of the Company’s internal controls, is sufficiently complete so that relevant controls are not omitted, and is relevant to an evaluation of internal controls over financial reporting.

Management conducted an evaluation of internal controls based on the COSO 2013 framework. The evaluation included a full scale, documented risk assessment, based on the principles described in the framework,

---

[Table of Contents](#)

and included identification of key controls. Management completed documentation of its testing to verify the effectiveness of the key controls. Based on the evaluation, management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2015.

The effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting has been audited by our independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their attestation report appearing below, which expresses an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2015.

*(c) Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*

There was no change in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the fourth quarter of 2015 that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

**Item 9B. Other Information**

None.

**PART III**

**Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance**

The information required by this Item will be contained in our definitive Proxy Statement to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, in connection with our Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the “2016 Proxy Statement”) under the captions “Election of Directors,” “Board of Directors Meetings and Committees of the Board,” “Executive Officers” and “Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance” and is incorporated herein by reference.

We have adopted a Code of Ethics that applies to all our directors, officers and employees. The Code of Ethics is publicly available on our website at [www.galectintherapeutics.com](http://www.galectintherapeutics.com). Amendments to the Code of Ethics and any grant of a waiver from a provision of the Code of Ethics requiring disclosure under applicable SEC rules will be disclosed on our website.

On March 11, 2016, our Board of Directors adopted amendments to Article II, Section 2.13(i) of the Amended and Restated Bylaws of the Company, effective immediately, regarding the stockholder vote required in connection with the election of directors. Section 2.13(i) of the Bylaws was amended in order to provide that directors will be elected by a majority of the votes cast by each of the holders of the shares of capital stock present and entitled to vote at the meeting. Previously, the Bylaws provided that directors would be elected by a plurality of the votes cast by each of the holders of the shares of capital stock present and entitled to vote at the meeting. Section 2.13(i) of the Bylaws was further amended in order to provide that in the event the number of directors receiving a majority vote of the shares cast exceeds the number of available director positions, then, of the directors with a majority of the votes cast, those directors with a plurality of the votes cast would be elected as the directors of the Board. Previously, the Bylaws were silent on this issue.

**Item 11. Executive Compensation**

The information required by this Item will be incorporated by reference from the information under the caption “Compensation of Named Executive Officers” contained in our 2016 Proxy Statement.

**Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters**

The information required by this item will be incorporated by reference from the information under the caption “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” contained in our 2016 Proxy Statement.

**Item 13. Certain Relationships, Related Transactions and Director Independence**

The information required by this item will be incorporated by reference from the information under the caption “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions” contained in our 2016 Proxy Statement.

**Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services**

The information required by this item will be incorporated by reference from the information under the captions “Audit Fees”, “Audit-Related Fees,” “Tax Fees,” “All Other Fees” and “Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures” contained in our 2016 Proxy Statement.



**PART IV**

**Item 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules**

(a) 1. Consolidated Financial Statement Schedules

The Consolidated Financial Statements are filed as part of this report.

2. Consolidated Financial Statement Schedules

All schedules are omitted because of the absence of conditions under which they are required or because the required information is included in the Consolidated Financial Statements or notes thereto.

3. Exhibits

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
3.1	Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation of Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on May 30, 2012.)
3.2*	Amended and Restated Bylaws of Galectin Therapeutics Inc., as amended.
3.3	Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock of Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc., as filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada on October 5, 2007. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on October 9, 2007.)
3.4	Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series B-1 Convertible Preferred Stock and Series B-2 Convertible Preferred Stock of Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc., as filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada on February 11, 2009. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
3.5	Certificate of Amendment to the Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series B-1 Convertible Preferred Stock and Series B-2 Convertible Preferred Stock of Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc., as filed with the secretary of State of the State of Nevada on August 12, 2009. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2009 as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2009.)
3.6	Certificate of Amendment No. 2 to the Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series B-1 Convertible Preferred Stock and Series B-2 Convertible Preferred Stock, as filed with the State of Nevada, on February 17, 2010. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on February 17, 2010.)
3.7	Certificate of Amendment with respect to the Amended and Restated Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitation of Series B-1 Convertible Preferred Stock and Series B-2 Convertible Preferred Stock of Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc., as filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada on January 26, 2011. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 27, 2011.)
3.8	Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitation of Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock of Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc., as filed with the Secretary of State of Nevada on December 30, 2010. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 6, 2011.)
3.9	Certificate of Change as filed with the Nevada Secretary of State on March 1, 2012. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 23, 2012.)

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
4.1	Form of Class A-1 Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
4.2	Form of Class A-2 Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
4.3	Form of Class B Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
4.4	Amended Form of Class A-1 Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 27, 2011.)
4.5	Amended Form of Class A-2 Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 27, 2011.)
4.6	Amended Form of Class B Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 27, 2011.)
4.7	Form of Warrant Agreement between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company, as warrant agent (including form of warrant certificate) (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 23, 2012.)
4.8	Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on November 20, 2015.)
10.1†	Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 2001 Stock Incentive Plan. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-QSB for the quarter ended September 30, 2001 filed with the Commission on November 14, 2001.)
10.2†	Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 2003 Non-employee Director Stock Incentive Plan. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-8, as filed with the Commission on October 22, 2003.)
10.3†	Employment Agreement, effective January 2, 2004, between Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and David Platt. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2003, as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2004.)
10.4†	Form of Incentive Stock Option Agreement (under the 2001 Stock Incentive Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended September 30, 2004 as filed with the Commission on November 19, 2004.)
10.5†	Form of Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement (under the 2001 Stock Incentive Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended September 30, 2004 as filed with the Commission on November 19, 2004.)
10.6†	Form of Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement (under the 2003 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended September 30, 2004 as filed with the Commission on November 19, 2004.)
10.7	Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on February 15, 2008.)
10.8	Promissory Note dated February 12, 2009 issued by Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc. in favor of 10X Fund, L.P. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
10.9	Security Agreement dated February 12, 2009 between Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and 10X Fund, L.P. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
10.10	Escrow Agreement dated February 12, 2009 among Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc., 10X Fund, L.P. and Investment Law Group of Gillett, Mottern & Walker, LLP, as Escrow Agent. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
10.11	Registration Rights Agreement dated February 12, 2009 between Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and 10X Fund, L.P. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
10.12†	Separation Agreement dated February 12, 2009 between Pro Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and David Platt, Ph.D. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
10.13†	Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 2009 Incentive Compensation Plan. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on February 18, 2009.)
10.14†	Form of Restricted Stock Grant Agreement (under the 2009 Incentive Compensation Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2009.)
10.15†	Form of Non-Qualified Stock Option Grant Agreement (under the 2009 Incentive Compensation Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2009.)
10.16†	Form of Incentive Stock Option Grant Agreement (under the 2009 Incentive Compensation Plan). (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2009.)
10.17	Agreement with the 10X Fund L.P., dated February 11, 2010. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on February 17, 2010.)
10.18†	Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated August 3, 2010 issued to Peter Traber. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 13, 2010.)
10.19	Letter Agreement Between 10X Fund, L.P. and Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 13, 2010.)
10.20	Form of Securities Purchase Agreement for Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 6, 2011.)
10.21	Agreement dated January 21, 2011, between Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and 10X Fund L.P. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on January 27, 2011.)
10.22†	Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement dated March 7, 2011 (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 9, 2011.)
10.23†	Amended Employment Agreement dated March 8, 2011 between Anthony D. Squeglia, and Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 14, 2011.)
10.24†	Amended Employment Agreement dated March 8, 2011 between Maureen Foley, and Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 14, 2011.)

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
10.25†	Amended Employment Agreement dated March 31, 2011 between Anatole Klyosov, and Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on April 6, 2011.)
10.26†	Employment Agreement dated March 31, 2011 between Eli Zomer and Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on April 6, 2011.)
10.27†	Separation Agreement dated March 31, 2011 between Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Theodore D. Zucconi (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on April 6, 2011.)
10.28	Agreement dated April 22, 2011, between Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Sigma-Aldrich, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on April 28, 2011.)
10.29†	Employment Agreement dated March 31, 2011 between Peter Traber, and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on June 2, 2011.)
10.30†	Employment Agreement dated June 28, 2011 between James C. Czirr, and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on July 5, 2011.)
10.31†	Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement for Peter G. Traber, M.D. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on August 15, 2011.)
10.32†	Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement for James C. Czirr (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on August 15, 2011.)
10.33†	Consulting Agreement, dated March 2, 2012 between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and Thomas A. McGauley (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on May 11, 2012.)
10.34†	Independent Consulting Agreement dated April 30, 2012, between Scott L. Friedman, M.D. and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on November 9, 2012.)
10.35†	Amended Employment Agreement dated July 19, 2012 between Maureen Foley and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on November 9, 2012.)
10.36†	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement dated December 11, 2014 between Harold H. Shlevin and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on December 12, 2014.)
10.37†	Independent Consulting Agreement dated September 19, 2012 between Thomas A. McGauley and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on November 9, 2012.)
10.38	Amended and Restated Master Services Agreement dated February 1, 2013 between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and CTI Clinical Trial Services, Inc. and CTI Clinical Consulting Services Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on May 10, 2013.)
10.39	Amended Form of Class A-2 Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2013.)

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
10.40	Amended Form of Class B Common Stock Purchase Warrant (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2013.)
10.41†	Employment Agreement dated June 20, 2013 between Jack W. Callicutt and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2013.)
10.42†	Amendment to Independent Consulting Agreement dated June 19, 2013 between Thomas A. McGauley and Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2013.)
10.43†	Stock Option Agreement with Thomas A. McGauley dated June 19, 2013 (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2013.)
10.44	At Market Issuance Sales Agreement, dated October 25, 2013, by and between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and MLV & Co. LLC (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on October 25, 2013.)
10.45	Amendment No. 1 to At Market Issuance Sales Agreement, dated March 21, 2014, by and between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and MLV & Co. LLC (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-3 as filed with the Commission on March 21, 2014.)
10.46	Project Addendum (with Master Services Agreement), dated March 6, 2015, by and between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and PPD Development, L.P. (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on March 12, 2015.)***
10.47	Securities Purchase Agreement, dated November 19, 2015, by and among Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and the Purchasers identified therein (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on November 20, 2015.)
10.48	Placement Agency Agreement, dated November 19, 2015, by and between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and Roth Capital Partners, LLC (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on November 20, 2015.)
10.49	Registration Rights Agreement, dated November 19, 2015, by and between Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and the Purchasers signatory thereto (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on November 20, 2015.)
10.50*	Project Addendum Modification, dated March 11, 2016, by and between Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. and PPD Development, L.P.***
16.1	Letter of McGladrey LLP dated September 9, 2015 (Incorporated by reference to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K as filed with the Commission on September 11, 2015.)
21.1*	Subsidiaries of Galectin Therapeutics Inc.
23.1*	Consent of McGladrey LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm.
31.1*	Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
31.2*	Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
32.1*#	Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32.2*#	Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
101.INS*	XBRL Instance document.
101.SCH*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document.
101.CAL*	XBRL Taxonomy Calculation Linkbase Document.
101.DEF*	XBRL Taxonomy Definition Linkbase Document.
101.LAB*	XBRL Taxonomy Label Linkbase Document.
101.PRE*	XBRL Taxonomy Presentation Linkbase Document.

\* Filed herewith.

# Furnished herewith and not “filed” for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

\*\*\* Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. has requested confidential treatment with respect to portions of this exhibit. Those portions have been omitted from the exhibit and filed separately with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

† Executive Compensation Arrangement pursuant to 601(b)(10)(iii)(A) of Regulation S-K

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, on March 15, 2016.

GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC.

By:           /s/ PETER G. TRABER            
Name: Peter G. Traber, M.D.  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and President

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ PETER G. TRABER</u> Peter G. Traber, M.D.	Chief Executive Officer, President and Director (principal executive officer)	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ JACK W. CALLICUTT</u> Jack W. Callicutt	Chief Financial Officer (principal financial and accounting officer)	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ MARC RUBIN</u> Marc Rubin, M.D.	Director and Chairman of the Board	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ JAMES C. CZIRR</u> James C. Czirr	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ GILBERT F. AMELIO</u> Gilbert F. Amelio	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ ARTHUR R. GREENBERG</u> Arthur R. Greenberg	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ KEVIN D. FREEMAN</u> Kevin D. Freeman	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ JOHN MAULDIN</u> John Mauldin	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ GILBERT S. OMENN</u> Gilbert S. Omenn, M.D, Ph.D.	Director	March 15, 2016
<u>/s/ STEVEN PRELACK</u> Steven Prelack	Director	March 15, 2016

[Table of Contents](#)

**Galectin Therapeutics Inc. and subsidiaries**

**Table of Contents**

1.	<a href="#">Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firms</a>	F-1
2.	<a href="#">Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2015 and 2014</a>	F-4
3.	<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Operations for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013</a>	F-5
4.	<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock and Stockholders' Equity for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013</a>	F-6
5.	<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013</a>	F-9
6.	<a href="#">Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	F-10



**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheet of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. and subsidiaries (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2015, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in redeemable convertible preferred stock and stockholders’ equity, and cash flows for the year then ended. The Company’s management is responsible for these financial statements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2015, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also, in our opinion, the related consolidated financial statement schedule for the year ended December 31, 2015, when considered in relation to the basic consolidated financial statements taken as a whole, presents fairly, in all material respects, the information set forth therein.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the Company’s internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2015, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in 2013, and our report dated March 14, 2016, expressed an unqualified opinion.

/s/ CHERRY BEKAERT LLP

Atlanta, Georgia  
March 14, 2016

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of  
Galectin Therapeutics, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheet of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2014, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in redeemable convertible preferred stock and stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2014. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. as of December 31, 2014, and the results of its operations and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2014, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ RSM US LLP

Charlotte, North Carolina  
March 18, 2015

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of  
Galectin Therapeutics, Inc.

We have audited Galectin Therapeutic Inc. and subsidiaries' ("the Company") internal control over financial reporting as December 31, 2015, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in 2013. The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting included in the accompanying Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2015, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in 2013.

We have also audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States of America), the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2015 and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in redeemable convertible preferred stock and stockholders' equity, and cash flows of the Company for the year then ended, and our report dated March 14, 2016, expressed an unqualified opinion. Also, in our opinion, the related consolidated financial statement schedule for the year ended December 31, 2015, when considered in relation to the basic consolidated financial statements taken as a whole, presents fairly, in all material respects, the information set forth therein.

/s/ CHERRY BEKAERT LLP

Atlanta, Georgia  
March 14, 2016

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES****CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2015</b>	<b>2014</b>
	<b>(in thousands)</b>	
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 25,846	\$ 29,128
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	554	533
Total current assets	<u>26,400</u>	<u>29,661</u>
Property and equipment, net	—	1
Intangible assets, net	8	15
Total assets	<u>\$ 26,408</u>	<u>\$ 29,677</u>
<b>LIABILITIES, REDEEMABLE CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 448	\$ 906
Accrued expenses	845	729
Accrued dividends payable	67	68
Total current liabilities	<u>1,360</u>	<u>1,703</u>
Total liabilities	<u>1,360</u>	<u>1,703</u>
Commitments and contingencies (Note 9)		
Series B-1 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock; 900,000 shares authorized, issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and 2014, redemption value and liquidation value: \$1,800,000, at December 31, 2015		
	1,748	1,731
Series B-2 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock; 2,100,000 shares authorized, issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and 2014, redemption value and liquidation value: \$4,200,000, at December 31, 2015		
	3,537	3,325
Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock; 1,000 shares authorized, 176 issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and 2014, redemption value: \$6,487,000, liquidation value: \$1,786,000 at December 31, 2015		
	1,723	1,723
Stockholders' equity:		
Undesignated stock, \$0.01 par value; 20,000,000 shares authorized at December 31, 2015 and 2014, 8,001,000 shares designated at December 31, 2015 and 2014	—	—
Series A 12% convertible preferred stock; 5,000,000 shares authorized, 1,377,500 and 1,452,500 issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively, liquidation value \$1,418,000 at December 31, 2015,	557	567
Common stock, \$0.001 par value; 50,000,000 shares authorized at December 31, 2015 and 2014, 28,825,033 and 22,277,283 issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively	28	22
Additional paid-in capital	157,504	139,531
Retained deficit	(140,049)	(118,925)
Total stockholders' equity	<u>18,040</u>	<u>21,195</u>
Total liabilities, redeemable convertible preferred stock and stockholders' equity	<u>\$ 26,408</u>	<u>\$ 29,677</u>

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS**

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2015	2014	2013
	(in thousands, except per share amounts)		
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	\$ 13,114	\$ 8,425	\$ 5,688
General and administrative	6,965	7,005	6,416
Total operating expenses	20,079	15,430	12,104
Total operating loss	(20,079)	(15,430)	(12,104)
Other income (expense):			
Interest income	52	42	16
Loss from equity method investment in Galectin Sciences, LLC	—	(400)	—
Total other income (expense)	52	(358)	16
Net loss	<u>\$ (20,027)</u>	<u>\$ (15,788)</u>	<u>\$ (12,088)</u>
Preferred stock dividends	(868)	(943)	(867)
Preferred stock accretion	(229)	(229)	(229)
Warrant modification	—	—	(8,763)
Net loss applicable to common stockholders	<u>\$ (21,124)</u>	<u>\$ (16,960)</u>	<u>\$ (21,947)</u>
Basic and diluted net loss per share	<u>\$ (0.88)</u>	<u>\$ (0.78)</u>	<u>\$ (1.30)</u>
Shares used in computing basic and diluted net loss per share	24,120	21,849	16,874

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES**

**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN REDEEMABLE CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**

For the Years Ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013

(amounts in thousands except share data)

	Series B-1 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series B-2 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock		Stockholders' Deficit						
							Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock			Retained Deficit	Total Stockholders' Deficit
	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Additional Paid-In Capital		
<b>Balance at December 31, 2012</b>	<b>900,000</b>	<b>\$ 1,698</b>	<b>2,100,000</b>	<b>\$ 2,900</b>	<b>220</b>	<b>\$ 2,154</b>	<b>1,562,500</b>	<b>\$ 632</b>	<b>16,060,853</b>	<b>\$ 16</b>	<b>\$ 80,535</b>	<b>\$ (80,018)</b>	<b>\$ 1,165</b>
Accretion of Series B redeemable convertible preferred stock		17		158								(175)	(175)
Accretion of beneficial conversion feature for Series B-2				54								(54)	(54)
Series A 12% convertible preferred stock dividend								25,062		148		(148)	
Series B-1 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								36,106		178		(178)	
Series B-2 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								84,553		418		(418)	
Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock dividend								23,848		123		(123)	
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of warrants								1,284,948	1	4,504			4,505
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options								213,008		271			271
Issuance of common stock, net of issuance costs of \$111								599,942	1	3,832			3,833
Conversion of Series A to common stock							(110,000)	(45)	18,387		45		
Conversion of Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock to common stock					(24)	(235)		40,193		235		(8,763)	235
Modification of warrants										8,763			
Stock-based compensation expense										3,789			3,789
Net loss												(12,088)	(12,088)
<b>Balance at December 31, 2013</b>	<b>900,000</b>	<b>\$ 1,715</b>	<b>2,100,000</b>	<b>\$ 3,112</b>	<b>196</b>	<b>\$ 1,919</b>	<b>1,452,500</b>	<b>\$ 587</b>	<b>18,386,900</b>	<b>\$ 18</b>	<b>\$ 102,841</b>	<b>\$ (101,965)</b>	<b>\$ 1,481</b>

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES**
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN REDEEMABLE CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY —  
(Continued)**
**For the Years Ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013**
**(amounts in thousands except share data)**

	Series B-1 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series B-2 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock		Stockholders' Deficit						
							Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock			Retained Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Additional Paid-In Capital		
Accretion of Series B redeemable convertible preferred stock		16		157								(173)	(173)
Accretion of beneficial conversion feature for Series B-2				56								(56)	(56)
Series A 12% convertible preferred stock dividend								19,490			154	(154)	
Series B-1 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								32,043			206	(206)	
Series B-2 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								74,764			480	(480)	
Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock dividend								13,152			103	(103)	
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of warrants								572,148	1		1,675		1,676
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options								246,445			452		452
Issuance of common stock								2,881,269	3		29,334		29,337
Conversion of Series A to common stock							(50,000)	(20)	8,350		20		
Conversion of Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock to common stock					(20)	(196)		33,756			196		196
Issuance of common stock to consultants								8,966			100		100
Stock-based compensation expense											3,970		3,970
Net loss												(15,788)	(15,788)
<b>Balance at December 31, 2014</b>	<b>900,000</b>	<b>\$ 1,731</b>	<b>2,100,000</b>	<b>\$ 3,325</b>	<b>176</b>	<b>\$ 1,723</b>	<b>1,402,500</b>	<b>\$ 567</b>	<b>22,277,283</b>	<b>\$ 22</b>	<b>\$ 139,531</b>	<b>\$(118,925)</b>	<b>\$ 21,195</b>

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES**
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN REDEEMABLE CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY — (Continued)**
**For the Years Ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013**
**(amounts in thousands except share data)**

	Series B-1 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series B-2 12% Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock		Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock		Stockholders' Deficit						
							Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock			Retained Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Number of Shares	Amount	Additional Paid-In Capital		
Accretion of Series B redeemable convertible preferred stock		17		156								(173)	(173)
Accretion of beneficial conversion feature for Series B-2				56								(56)	(56)
Series A 12% convertible preferred stock dividend								28,000			80	(80)	
Series B-1 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								88,195			208	(208)	
Series B-2 12% redeemable convertible preferred stock dividend								205,788			479	(479)	
Series C super dividend convertible preferred stock dividend								36,910			101	(101)	
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options								95,574					
Issuance of common stock								6,059,116	6		13,695		13,701
Issuance of common stock to consultants								30,000			71		71
Conversion of Series A to common stock							(25,000)	(10)	4,167		10		
Stock-based compensation expense											3,329		3,329
Net loss												(20,027)	(20,027)
<b>Balance at December 31, 2015</b>	<b>900,000</b>	<b>\$ 1,748</b>	<b>2,100,000</b>	<b>\$ 3,537</b>	<b>176</b>	<b>\$ 1,723</b>	<b>1,377,500</b>	<b>\$ 557</b>	<b>28,825,033</b>	<b>\$ 28</b>	<b>\$ 157,504</b>	<b>\$(140,049)</b>	<b>\$ 18,040</b>

See notes to consolidated financial statements.



**GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2015	2014	2013
	(in thousands)		
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:</b>			
Net loss	\$(20,027)	\$(15,788)	\$(12,088)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	7	10	12
Stock-based compensation expense	3,400	4,070	3,789
Loss from equity method investment in Galectin Sciences LLC	—	400	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(21)	(335)	(39)
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	(342)	(783)	848
Other long-term liabilities	—	—	(6)
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(16,983)</u>	<u>(12,426)</u>	<u>(7,484)</u>
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:</b>			
Equity method investment in Galectin Sciences LLC	—	(400)	—
Purchases of property and equipment	—	—	—
Change in restricted cash and security deposit	—	—	—
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>—</u>	<u>(400)</u>	<u>—</u>
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:</b>			
Net proceeds from issuance of common stock and warrants	13,701	29,337	3,833
Net proceeds from exercise of common stock warrants and options	—	2,128	4,776
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>13,701</u>	<u>31,465</u>	<u>8,609</u>
<b>NET INCREASE (DECREASE) IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS</b>	<b>(3,282)</b>	<b>18,639</b>	<b>1,125</b>
<b>CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS, BEGINNING OF PERIOD</b>	<b>29,128</b>	<b>10,489</b>	<b>9,364</b>
<b>CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS, END OF PERIOD</b>	<b><u>\$ 25,846</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 29,128</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 10,489</u></b>
<b>NONCASH FINANCING ACTIVITIES:</b>			
Payment of preferred stock dividends in common stock	\$ 868	\$ 943	\$ 867

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

## GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES

### NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

---

#### 1. Nature of Business and Basis of Presentation

Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (the “Company”) is a clinical stage biopharmaceutical company that is applying its leadership in galectin science and drug development to create new therapies for fibrotic disease and cancer. These candidates are based on the Company’s targeting of galectin proteins which are key mediators of biologic and pathologic function. These compounds also may have application for drugs to treat other diseases and chronic health conditions.

The Company was founded in July 2000, was incorporated in the State of Nevada in January 2001 under the name “Pro-Pharmaceuticals, Inc.,” and changed its name to “Galectin Therapeutics Inc.” on May 26, 2011. On March 23, 2012, the Company effected a one-for-six reverse stock split. All common share and per share amounts in these financial statements have been adjusted to reflect the effect of the reverse split.

The Company has operated at a loss since its inception and has had no revenues. The Company anticipates that losses will continue for the foreseeable future. At December 31, 2015, the Company had \$25,846,000 of unrestricted cash and cash equivalents available to fund future operations. The Company believes there is sufficient cash to fund currently planned operations through March 31, 2017.

The Company is subject to a number of risks similar to those of clinical stage companies, including dependence on key individuals, uncertainty of product development and generation of revenues, dependence on outside sources of capital, risks associated with clinical trials of products, dependence on third-party collaborators for research operations, need for regulatory approval of products, risks associated with protection of intellectual property, and competition with larger, better-capitalized companies. Successful completion of the Company’s development program and, ultimately, the attainment of profitable operations is dependent upon future events, including obtaining adequate financing to fulfill its development activities and achieving a level of revenues adequate to support the Company’s cost structure. There are no assurances that the Company will be able to obtain additional financing on favorable terms, or at all, or successfully market its products.

#### 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (“GAAP”).

*Basis of Consolidation.* The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and Galectin Therapeutics Security Corp., its wholly-owned subsidiary, which was incorporated in Delaware on December 23, 2003 and Galectin Sciences LLC (see Note 10). All intercompany transactions have been eliminated.

*Use of Estimates.* The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and judgments that may affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, equity, revenue, expenses and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. Management’s estimates and judgments include assumptions used in stock option and warrant liability valuations, useful lives of property and equipment and intangible assets, accrued liabilities, deferred income taxes and various other assumptions that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results may differ from those estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

*Fair Value Measurements.* The Company has certain financial assets and liabilities recorded at fair value. Fair values determined by Level 1 inputs utilize observable data such as quoted prices in active markets.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Fair values determined by Level 2 inputs utilize data points other than quoted prices in active markets that are observable either directly or indirectly. Fair values determined by Level 3 inputs utilize unobservable data points in which there is little or no market data, which require the reporting entity to develop its own assumptions. The estimated value of accounts payable and accrued expenses approximates their carrying value due to their short-term nature. There were no Level 2 or 3 assets or liabilities at December 31, 2015 or 2014.

*Cash and Cash Equivalents.* The Company considers all highly-liquid investments with original maturities of 90 days or less at the time of acquisition to be cash equivalents. The Company had no cash equivalents at December 31, 2015 or 2014.

*Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets.* Prepaid expenses and other assets consist principally of prepaid insurance.

*Property and Equipment.* Property and equipment, including leasehold improvements, are stated at cost, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization, and are depreciated or amortized using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the related assets of generally three years for computers and office equipment, five years for furniture and fixtures and the shorter of the useful life or life of the lease for leasehold improvements.

*Security Deposit.* At December 31, 2015 and 2014, the Company had a security deposit of \$6,000 for leased office space included in Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets.

*Intangible Assets.* Intangible assets include patent costs, consisting primarily of related capitalized legal fees, which are amortized over an estimated useful life of five years from issuance. Amortization expense in 2015, 2014 and 2013 was approximately \$6,000, \$8,000, and \$7,000 respectively. Gross intangible assets at December 31, 2015 and 2014 totaled \$78,000 each year, and accumulated amortization at December 31, 2015 and 2014 totaled \$69,000 and \$63,000, respectively.

*Long-Lived Assets.* The Company reviews all long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or circumstances indicate the carrying amount of such assets may not be recoverable. Recoverability of assets to be held or used is measured by comparison of the carrying value of the asset to the future undiscounted net cash flows expected to be generated by the asset. If such asset is considered to be impaired, the impairment recognized is measured by the amount by which the carrying value of the asset exceeds the discounted future cash flows expected to be generated by the asset.

*Accrued Expenses.* As part of the process of preparing our consolidated financial statements, we are required to estimate accrued expenses. This process involves identifying services that third parties have performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred on these services as of each balance sheet date in our consolidated financial statements. Examples of estimated accrued expenses include contract service fees in conjunction with clinical trials, professional service fees, such as those arising from the services of attorneys and accountants and accrued payroll expenses. In connection with these service fees, our estimates are most affected by our understanding of the status and timing of services provided relative to the actual services incurred by the service providers. In the event that we do not identify certain costs that have been incurred or we under- or over-estimate the level of services or costs of such services, our reported expenses for a reporting period could be understated or overstated. The date on which certain services commence, the level of services performed on or before a given date, and the cost of services are often subject to our judgment. We make these judgments based upon the facts and circumstances known to us in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S.

*Warrants Modification.* The Company has issued common stock warrants in connection with the execution of certain equity and debt financings. Certain warrants were accounted for as derivative liabilities at fair value. Such warrants did not meet the accounting criteria that a contract should not be considered a

derivative instrument if it is (1) indexed to its own stock and (2) classified in stockholders' equity. Changes in fair value of derivative liabilities are recorded in the consolidated statement of operations under the caption "Change in fair value of warrant liabilities." Warrants that are not considered derivative liabilities are accounted for at fair value at the date of issuance in additional paid-in capital. The fair value of warrants was determined using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model using assumptions regarding volatility of our common share price, remaining life of the warrant, and risk-free interest rates at each period end. There were no warrant liabilities as of December 31, 2015 or 2014.

*Research and Development Expenses.* Costs associated with research and development are expensed as incurred. Research and development expenses include, among other costs, salaries and other personnel-related costs, and costs incurred by outside laboratories and other accredited facilities in connection with clinical trials and preclinical studies.

*Income Taxes.* The Company accounts for income taxes in accordance with the accounting rules that requires an asset and liability approach to accounting for income taxes based upon the future expected values of the related assets and liabilities. Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are determined based on the differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities and for tax loss and credit carry forwards, and are measured using the expected tax rates estimated to be in effect when such basis differences reverse. Valuation allowances are established, if necessary, to reduce the deferred tax asset to the amount that will, more likely than not, be realized.

*Concentration of Credit Risk.* Financial instruments that subject the Company to credit risk consist of cash and cash equivalents and certificates of deposit. The Company maintains cash and cash equivalents and certificates of deposit with well-capitalized financial institutions. At times, those amounts may exceed federally insured limits. The Company has no significant concentrations of credit risk.

*Stock-Based Compensation.* Stock-based compensation cost is measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and is recognized as expense over the service period, which generally represents the vesting period. For awards that have performance based vesting conditions the Company recognizes the expense over the estimated period that the awards are expected to be earned. The Company generally uses the Black-Scholes option-pricing model to calculate the grant date fair value of stock options. For options that only vest upon the achievement of market conditions, the Company values the options using a Monte Carlo model to calculate the grant date fair value of the stock options. The expense related to options that vest based on market conditions is not reversed should those options not ultimately vest. The expense recognized over the service period is required to include an estimate of the awards that will be forfeited. Stock options issued to non-employees are accounted for in accordance with the provisions of ASC Subtopic 505-50, *Equity-Based Payments to Non-employees*, which requires valuing the stock options using an option pricing model (the Company uses Black-Scholes) and measuring such stock options to their current fair value when they vest.

*New Accounting Pronouncements.* The Company adopted Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), Accounting Standards Update No. 2014-10 "Development Stage Entities (Topic 915)" as of June 30, 2014. This new standard modifies financial statement presentation to eliminate the requirement to include inception-to-date information in the statements of operations and cash flows, among other provisions.

In August 2014, the FASB issued Accounting Standard Update No. 2014-15, *Disclosure of Uncertainties About an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*. The amendments require management to perform interim and annual assessments of an entity's ability to continue as a going concern and provides guidance on determining when and how to disclose going concern uncertainties in the financial statements. The standard applies to all entities and is effective for annual and interim reporting periods ending after December 15, 2016, with early adoption permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the impact that this new guidance will have on its financial statements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 3. Property and Equipment

Property and equipment consists of the following at December 31:

	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	(in thousands)	
Leasehold improvements	\$ 2	\$ 2
Computer and office equipment	13	13
Furniture and fixtures	59	59
Total	74	74
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(74)	(73)
Property and equipment—net	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$ 1</u>

Depreciation and amortization expense for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013 was \$1,000, \$2,000 and \$3,000, respectively.

### 4. Accrued Expenses

Accrued expenses consist of the following at December 31:

	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	(in thousands)	
Legal and accounting fees	\$123	\$118
Accrued compensation	626	604
Accrued research and development costs and other	96	7
Total	<u>\$845</u>	<u>\$729</u>

### 5. Stockholders' Equity

At December 31, 2015, the Company had 50,000,000 shares of common stock and 20,000,000 undesignated shares authorized. As of December 31, 2015, 5,000,000 shares have been designated for Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock, 900,000 shares have been designated for Series B-1 Convertible Preferred Stock, 2,100,000 shares have been designated for Series B-2 Convertible Preferred Stock, 1,000 shares have been designated for Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock and 11,999,000 remain undesignated.

#### ***2013 Private Placement of Common Stock***

On August 16, 2013, the Company issued 500,000 unregistered shares of its common stock for proceeds of \$3,000,000 to a single investor pursuant to a private placement. There were no warrants or placement fees associated with this transaction.

#### ***At Market Issuances of Common Stock***

On October 25, 2013, the Company entered into an At Market Issuance Sales Agreement (the "2013 At Market Agreement") with a sales agent under which the Company may issue and sell shares of its common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$30.0 million from time to time through the sales agent. Sales of the Company's common stock through the sales agent, if any, will be made by any method that is deemed an "at the market" offering as defined by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. The Company will pay to the sales agent a commission rate equal to 3.0% of the gross proceeds from the sale of any shares of common stock sold through the sales agent under the 2013 At Market Agreement. As of

## [Table of Contents](#)

December 31, 2013, the Company had issued 99,942 shares of its common stock through its 2013 At Market Agreement resulting in gross proceeds of approximately \$944,000. The Company incurred one time, initial legal and accounting costs of approximately \$82,000 and commissions of \$29,000 resulting in net proceeds of \$833,000 as of December 31, 2013. In January and February 2014, the Company issued 2,663,647 shares of common stock for net proceeds of approximately \$28,178,000 which completed the 2013 At Market Agreement.

On March 30, 2014, the Company entered into an At Market Issuance Sales Agreement (the “2014 At Market Agreement”) with a sales agent under which the Company may issue and sell shares of its common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$30.0 million from time to time through the sales agent. Sales of the Company’s common stock through the sales agent, if any, will be made by any method that is deemed an “at the market” offering as defined by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. The Company will pay to the sales agent a commission rate equal to 3.0% of the gross proceeds from the sale of any shares of common stock sold through the sales agent under the 2014 At Market Agreement. As of December 31, 2014, the Company had issued 217,622 shares of its common stock through its 2014 At Market Agreement at an average price of \$5.49 per share resulting in gross proceeds of approximately \$1,196,000. The Company incurred commissions of approximately \$36,000 resulting in net proceeds of approximately \$1,159,000 as of December 31, 2014. In 2015, the Company issued 1,297,216 shares of common stock for net proceeds of approximately \$4,571,000 under the 2014 At Market Agreement.

### ***2015 Registered Direct Offering***

On November 25, 2015, the Company completed an offering of 4,761,900 shares of common stock to three institutional investors at \$2.06 per share for net proceeds of approximately \$9,130,000. The Company also issued, to the three investors, warrants to purchase 3,571,425 shares of common stock at \$2.50 per share. The warrants have an expiration date of May 25, 2021. The warrants are exercisable beginning on May 25, 2016. The warrants provide for cashless exercise if at any time during the term of the warrants if there is no effective registration statement for the issuance or resale of the underlying warrant shares. The exercise price of each warrant is adjustable in the event of a stock split or stock combination, capital reorganization, merger or similar event. The warrants were valued at \$5,893,000 as of the issuance date of November 25, 2015, using the closing price of \$2.28, a life of 5.5 years, a volatility of 93% and a risk free interest rate of 1.84%. Based upon the Company’s analysis of the criteria contained in ASC Topic 815-40, “Derivatives and Hedging — Contracts in Entity’s Own Equity” the Company has determined that warrants issued in connection with this financing transaction were not derivative liabilities and therefore, were recorded as additional paid-in capital.

### ***Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock — February 4, 2008 Private Placement***

On February 4, 2008, the Company closed a private placement begun in October 2007 of its Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock (“Series A”) and related warrants. In this transaction, the Company sold units of securities at \$6.00 per unit, each unit comprised of (i) one share of Series A Preferred, (ii) a warrant to purchase one share of common stock for \$9.00, and (iii) a warrant to purchase one share of common stock for \$12.00. Each share of the Series A is entitled to dividends at the rate of 12% per annum payable at the Company’s option in cash or shares of common stock valued at the higher of \$6.00 per share or 100% of the value weighted average price of the Company’s share price for the 20 consecutive trading days prior to the applicable dividend payment date. Dividends are payable semi-annually on March 30 and September 30. The dividend paid on the initial dividend payment date is calculated from the date the Company deposited each subscription advance.

The shares of Series A are entitled to vote as a class with the Company’s common stock and each share of Series A is convertible at any time to one-sixth of a share of common stock, subject to adjustment in the event of a stock dividend, stock split or combination, reclassification or similar event. The Company has the

right to require conversion if the closing price of the common stock exceeds \$18.00 for 15 consecutive trading days and a registration statement covering the resale of the shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the Series A is then in effect. Each warrant is exercisable solely for cash beginning August 3, 2008 and expired on February 4, 2012. The exercise price of each warrant is adjustable in the event of a stock split or stock combination, capital reorganization, merger or similar event.

As of December 31, 2007, the Company had received subscription advances of \$1,667,500 for Series A. In 2008, the Company received additional subscription advances of \$75,000 resulting in total gross proceeds of \$1,742,500. On February 4, 2008 the Company closed the private placement. The Company incurred \$52,000 of cash transaction costs resulting in net cash proceeds of \$1,691,000. In addition, the Company incurred \$3,000 of costs for 1,400 warrants exercisable at \$9.00 issued to placement agents. Proceeds of \$984,000 were allocated to investor warrants using the Black-Scholes method with the following assumptions as of February 4, 2008: risk free interest rate 2.51%, volatility 95%, fair market value of the Company's common stock on February 4, 2008, and the share price on the closing date of the transaction of \$3.54. The warrants were originally accounted for as freestanding derivative instruments in the consolidated balance sheet formerly under the caption "Warrant Liabilities". These warrants were originally classified as a liability because the February 2006 warrants contain an anti-dilution provision in the event of a subsequent dilutive issuance and the potential number of shares issuable exceeded the Company's authorized shares. Changes in fair value were recognized as either a gain or loss in the consolidated statement of operations under the caption "Change in fair value of warrant liabilities". In the second quarter of 2008, the warrants were reclassified to equity as a result of an amendment to the Company's articles of incorporation approved at the May 21, 2008 annual meeting of shareholders increasing the Company's authorized common. Through May 21, 2008, these warrants were marked to market resulting in a reduction in warrant liabilities in the balance sheet and an offsetting credit to change in fair value of warrant liabilities in the statement of operations in the amount of \$100,000. The remaining fair value of \$502,000 was credited to additional paid-in capital in the balance sheet.

In 2015, 2014 and 2013, 25,000, 50,000 and 110,000 shares of Series A were converted into 4,167, 8,334 and 18,387 shares of common stock, respectively. Prior to 2013, a total of 180,000 shares of Series A had been converted into 30,000 shares of common stock.

### ***Series B Redeemable Convertible Preferred Stock***

On February 12, 2009, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement (the "10X Agreement") pursuant to which it agreed to issue and sell to 10X Fund LP, at two or more closings, up to: (i) 3,000,000 shares its Series B convertible preferred stock ("Series B redeemable convertible preferred stock" or "Series B") with an aggregate stated value of \$6.0 million and convertible into 2,000,000 shares of common stock at December 31, 2011 and (ii) warrants to purchase 6,000,000 shares of common stock.

Through a series of closings from February 2009 through May 2010, the Company issued and sold, pursuant to the 10X Agreement, a total of (i) 900,000 shares of Series B-1 convertible preferred stock ("Series B-1 redeemable convertible preferred stock" or "Series B-1") and related common stock warrants for 1,800,000 shares of common stock and (ii) 2,100,000 shares of Series B-2 convertible preferred stock ("Series B-2 redeemable convertible preferred stock" or "Series B-2") and related warrants for 4,200,000 shares of common stock for total net proceeds of \$5,483,000.

The terms of the Series B are as follows:

*Dividends.* Holders of the Series B will be entitled to receive cumulative dividends at the rate of 12% per share per annum (compounding monthly) payable quarterly which may, at the Company's option, be paid in cash or common stock. Pursuant to an agreement with the holder of all shares of Series B, on January 26, 2011, the Company amended and restated the Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and

## Table of Contents

Limitations for the Series B-1 and Series B-2, to provide that dividends are payable in cash or shares of Common Stock valued at 100% of the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for the 20 consecutive trading days prior to the dividend payment date on and after September 30, 2011. If the Company does not pay any dividend on the Series B, dividends will accrue at the rate of 15% per annum (compounding monthly).

*Conversion Rights.* Each share of Series B is convertible into two-thirds (approximately 0.667) shares of common stock at the conversion price of \$3.00 per share at the option of (i) the holder, at any time and (ii) the Company, at any time after February 12, 2010 (and upon 10 days notice) if the common stock is quoted at or above \$9.00 for 15 consecutive trading days and an effective registration statement regarding the underlying shares of common stock is in effect (subject to certain monthly volume limits). Pursuant to an agreement with the holder of all shares of Series B, on January 26, 2011, the Company amended and restated the Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations for the Series B-1 and Series B-2, to remove the Company's right to compel conversion of the Series B Preferred Stock to shares of its Common Stock

*Redemption Rights.* Pursuant to an agreement with the holder of all shares of Series B, on January 26, 2011, the Company amended and restated the Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations for the Series B-1 and Series B-2, to provide that, upon notice of not less than 30 trading days, a holder of Series B may require the Company to redeem, in whole or in part at any time on or after the earlier of (a) February 12, 2019 or (b) the date of issuance of a promissory note to David Platt (see Note 11) in connection with the achievement of certain milestones under his separation agreement.

The redemption price will be equal to the sum of the stated value of the Series B, plus all accrued but unpaid dividends thereon, as of the redemption date. If the Company fails to pay the redemption price in cash on the redemption date, then the holders of the Series B requesting redemption may, at their sole option, automatically convert their shares of Series B into a promissory note bearing interest at the rate of 15% per year and secured by a lien on all of the Company's assets. So long as any shares of the Series B remain outstanding, the Company is also subject to restrictions limiting, among other things, amendments to the Company's organizational documents; the purchase or redemption of the Company's capital stock; mergers, consolidations, liquidations and dissolutions; sales of assets; dividends and other restricted payments; investments and acquisitions; joint ventures, licensing agreements, exclusive marketing and other distribution agreements; issuances of securities; incurrence of indebtedness; incurrence of liens and other encumbrances and issuances of any common stock equivalents. Pursuant to a letter agreement with the 10X Fund, the holder of all of the Series B shares, the 10X Fund will consent to an amendment to Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations for the Series B-1 and Series B-2 to eliminate the redemption right.

*Liquidation Rights.* In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntarily or involuntarily, the holders of Series B will receive \$2 per share plus accrued and unpaid dividends, payable prior and in preference to any distributions to the holders of Common Stock but *pari passu* with the holders of the Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock.

*Voting Rights.* Except as noted below, the holder of each share of Series B shall be entitled to the number of votes equal to the number of shares of Common Stock into which such share of Series B would be convertible, and shall otherwise have voting rights and powers equal to the voting rights and powers of the Common Stock. With respect to the election of directors, the holders of the Series B shall vote together as a separate class to elect two (2) members of the Board of Directors (the "Series B Directors"), and the Company shall take all reasonably necessary or desirable actions within its control (including, without limitation, calling special meetings of the Board of Directors, nominating such persons designated by the holders of the Series B as directors on the applicable proxy statements and recommending their election) to permit the holders of the Series B to appoint two additional (2) members of the Board of Directors (the



“Series B Nominees”), who shall be subject to election by all shares of voting stock of the Company voting together as a single group, until such time as all authorized shares of Series B have been issued and sold, after which the number of Series B Nominees shall be three (3), and shall remain three (3) until there are no longer any shares of Series B outstanding. The holders of Series B shall vote together with the holders of Common Stock and other voting capital stock of the Company to elect all other members of the Board of Directors.

*Other Restrictions.* So long as any shares of the Series B remain outstanding, the Company may not, without the approval of the holders of a majority of the shares of Series B outstanding, among other things, (i) change the size of the Company’s Board of Directors; (ii) amend or repeal the Company’s Articles of Incorporation or Bylaws or file any articles of amendment designating the preferences, limitations and relative rights of any series of preferred stock, that would alter or change the preferences, rights, privileges or powers of, or restriction provided for the benefit of the Series B; (iii) create or increase the authorized amount of any additional class or series of shares of stock that is equal to or senior to Series B; (iv) increase or decrease the authorized number of shares of the Series B; (v) purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire for value any shares of any class of capital stock; (vi) merge or consolidate the Company into or with any other corporation or sell, assign, lease, pledge, encumber or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of the Company’s assets or those of any subsidiary; (vii) voluntarily or involuntarily liquidate, dissolve or wind up the Company or the Company’s business; (viii) pay or declare dividends on any capital stock other than the Preferred Stock, unless the Series B share ratably in such dividend and all accrued dividends payable with respect to the Series B have been paid prior to the payment or declaration of such dividend; (ix) acquire an equitable interest in, or the assets or business of any other entity in any form of transaction; (x) create or commit us to enter into a joint venture, licensing agreement or exclusive marketing or other distribution agreement with respect to the Company’s products, other than in the ordinary course of business; (xi) permit the Company or any subsidiary to sell or issue any security of such subsidiary to any person or entity other than the Company; (xii) enter into, create, incur, assume or guarantee any indebtedness for borrowed money of any kind (other than indebtedness existing on the initial closing date and approved by Series B shareholders); (xiii) enter into, create, incur or assume any liens of any kind (other than certain permitted liens); (xiv) issue any common stock or common stock equivalents; (xv) increase the number of shares of the Company’s common stock that may be issued pursuant to options, warrants or rights to employees, directors, officers, consultants or advisors above 250,000.

*Warrants.* Each Class A-1 warrant, Class A-2 warrant and Class B warrant is exercisable at \$3.00 per share of common stock at any time on or after the date of issuance until the fifth anniversary of the respective issue date. The Company may, upon 30 days’ notice and so long as an effective registration statement regarding the underlying shares of common stock is in effect, issue a termination notice with respect to (i) each Class A-1 warrant on any trading day on which the market value of the common stock for each of the 15 previous trading days exceeded \$7.50 per share and (ii) each Class A-2 warrant on any trading day on which the market value of the common stock for each of the 15 previous trading days exceeded \$10.50 per share. All Class A-1 warrants were exercised for cash proceeds of \$3,000,000 in 2011 and 500,000 of the Class A-2 warrants were exercised for cash proceeds of \$1,500,000 in 2013. Subsequently, in January 2014, the remaining 500,000 Class A-2 warrants were exercised for cash proceeds of \$1,500,000.

The fair value of the warrants issued in connection with the Series B-1 was \$1,296,000 at the date of issuance based on the following assumptions: an expected life of 5 years, volatility of 118%, risk free interest rate of 1.79% and zero dividends. The Company allocated the gross proceeds based on the relative fair value of the Series B-1 and the related warrants, resulting in \$1,105,000 of the proceeds being allocated to additional paid-in capital. The Company analyzed the Series B-1, post-allocation of the gross proceeds, and determined that there was no beneficial conversion feature at the date of issuance. The issuance costs of the Series B-1 and the amounts allocated to warrants were recorded as a reduction to the carrying value of the Series B-1 when issued, and are accreted to the redemption value of the Series B-1 through the earliest

redemption date. Due to the redemption feature, the Company has presented the Series B-1 outside of permanent equity, in the mezzanine of the consolidated balance sheets at December 31, 2015 and 2014.

The fair value of the warrants issued during the year ended December 31, 2010 in connection with the Series B-2 was \$4,148,000 at the dates of issuance based on the following assumptions: an expected life of 5 years, volatility of 126% to 129%, risk free interest rates of 2.27% to 2.43% and zero dividends. The fair value of the warrants issued during the year ended December 31, 2009 in connection with the Series B-2 was \$5,333,000 at the dates of issuance based on the following assumptions: an expected life of 5 years, volatility of 124% to 127%, risk free interest rates of 1.98% to 2.70% and zero dividends. The Company allocated the gross proceeds based on the relative fair value of the Series B-2 and the related warrants, resulting in \$1,028,000 and \$1,732,000 of the proceeds being allocated to additional paid-in capital for the years ended December 31, 2010 and 2009, respectively. The issuance costs of the Series B-2 and the amounts allocated to warrants were recorded as a reduction to the carrying value of the Series B-2 when issued, and are accreted to the redemption value of the Series B-2 through the earliest redemption dates. Due to the redemption feature, the Company has presented the Series B-2 outside of permanent equity, in the mezzanine of the consolidated balance sheets at December 31, 2015 and 2014.

The Company analyzed the Series B-2, post-allocation of the gross proceeds, and determined that there was a beneficial conversion feature at the dates of issuance. Because the closing price of the common stock on the closing date was greater than the effective conversion price, \$388,000 and \$628,000 of the proceeds (limited to the allocation of the proceeds) during the years ended December 31, 2010 and 2009, respectively, were allocated to an embedded beneficial conversion feature of the Series B-2. The amount allocated to the beneficial conversion feature was recorded as a discount to the Series B-2 is being accreted, with such accretion being charged through the earliest redemption dates.

#### ***Series C 6% Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock***

On December 29, 2010, the Company designated and authorized the sale and issuance of up to 1,000 shares of Series C Super Dividend Convertible Preferred Stock (“Series C”) with a par value of \$0.01 and a stated value equal to \$10,000 (the “Stated Value”).

On December 30, 2010, the Company sold and issued 212 shares of Series C at a price of \$10,000 per share for gross proceeds of \$2,120,000. The Company incurred \$47,000 of cash transaction costs resulting in net cash proceeds of \$2,073,000. In addition, the Company issued 500 warrants exercisable at \$7.20 to a placement agent which had a de minimis value. Additionally, in January 2011, the Company sold and issued 13 shares of Series C at a price of \$10,000 per share for gross proceeds of \$130,000.

The terms of the Series C are as follows:

*Conversion Rights.* Each holder of Series C may convert all, but not less than all, of his Series C shares plus accrued and unpaid dividends into Common Stock at the price of \$6.00 per share of Common Stock (“Conversion Price”), such that approximately 1,667 shares of Common Stock will be issued per each converted share of Series C (accrued and unpaid dividends will be issued as additional shares). At December 31, 2015, the 176 outstanding shares of Series C were convertible into a total of approximately 293,340 shares of Common Stock.

Subject to the continuing obligation to pay post conversion dividends, the Company may convert all, but not less than all, of the Series C (plus all accrued and unpaid dividends) into Common Stock, at the Conversion Price, upon such time that the closing price of the Common Stock is no less than \$18.00 per share for 15 consecutive trading days.

*Dividends.* Holders of Series C shall be entitled to receive cumulative non-compounding dividends at the rate per share of Series C equal to the greater of (i) 6% per annum of the Stated Value (also defined as the

## Table of Contents

“Floor”) or (ii) 2.5% of net sales until the total dividends paid is equal to the initial investment and 1.25% of net sales thereafter. The maximum amount each Series C shareholder will receive in dividend payments is equal to \$100,000 (the “Maximum Payout”). For purposes of this dividend calculation, net sales shall mean gross revenues actually received by the Company, from the sale or licensing of the product DAVANAT<sup>®</sup> (GM-CT-01), less chargebacks, returns, expenses attributable to product recalls, duties, customs, sales tax, freight, insurance, shipping expenses, allowances and other customary deductions.

The dividend shall be payable in arrears semiannually on March 31 and September 30, beginning with the first such date after the original issue date; provided, however, that all dividends and all other distributions shall cease, and no further dividends or other distributions shall be paid, in respect of each share of Series C from and after such time that the Maximum Payout has been paid in respect of such share of Series C. Such dividends shall be payable at the Company’s option either in cash or in duly authorized, fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock valued at the higher of (i) \$3.00 per share or (ii) the average of the Common Stock trading price for the ten (10) consecutive trading days ending on the trading day that is immediately prior to the dividend payment date.

*Series C Post Conversion Dividend Right.* In the event that any share of Series C is converted into Common Stock before the Maximum Payout is paid in respect of such converted share of Series C, then the holder shall have the right to continue to receive dividends in respect of such converted share of Series C equal to the remaining payout (the “Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Dividend Right”) which shall be equal to the Maximum Payout less the cumulative dividends received through the conversion date. One share of Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Dividend Right shall be issued for each such converted share of Series C. The holder of each Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Dividend Right shall receive the remaining payout on an equal basis and in conjunction with the then outstanding shares of Series C and all the other then outstanding Series C Post Conversion Dividend Rights, in the same manner and subject to the same terms and conditions as applicable to the payment of dividends on each share of Series C, except that for purposes of calculating the dividend the Floor shall not apply. The Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Dividend Right shall have no stated value, liquidation preference or right to any dividends or distributions other than the remaining payout. The Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Right is subject to redemption in the same manner as outstanding Series C shares.

At the date of issuance, the Series C have an embedded dividend right to continue to receive dividend payments after conversion to common stock (the Series C Post Conversion Dividend Right) which requires bifurcation. The value of this post conversion dividend right on the date of issuance was determined to be de minimis due to the fact that the payment of a dividend stream other than the 6% dividend and conversion of Series C prior to the Company achieving sales of GM-CT-01 was deemed improbable at that time. Upon a conversion of the Series C, the Company will be required to record a liability and the related expense during the period of conversion.

In July 2011, 5 shares of Series C were converted into 8,334 shares of common stock and 5 Series C Post Conversion Dividend Rights (Dividend Rights) were issued. In 2013, 24 shares of Series C were converted into 40,193 shares of common stock and 24 Dividend Rights were issued. In 2014, 20 shares of Series C were converted into 33,756 shares of common stock and 20 Dividend Rights were issued. Per the terms of the Series C, these Dividend Rights shall continue to participate in dividends, however the Floor shall not apply. At December 31, 2015 and 2014, these Dividend Rights were determined to have a de minimis value, as the payment of a dividend is considered improbable at this time. The Company will continue to evaluate and assess the Series C Post Conversion Dividend Right for each reporting period.

*Liquidation Rights.* In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntarily or involuntarily, the holders of Series C will receive \$10,000 per share plus accrued and unpaid dividends, payable prior and in preference to any distributions to the holders of Common Stock but after and subordinate to the Series A 12% Convertible Preferred Stock (“Series A”), Series B-1 and Series B-2, subject to the Maximum Payout.

## Table of Contents

*Redemption.* Upon a sale of the Company, the Company shall redeem all of the then outstanding shares of Series C and Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Rights within thirty (30) days after the transaction constituting the sale of the Company is closed and such closing is fully funded. The price to redeem a share of Series C and each redeemed Series C Preferred Stock Post Conversion Redemption Right shall be equal to (i) (A) the applicable return on investment (“ROI”) percentage, multiplied by (B) \$10,000, minus (ii) the cumulative dividends received through the redemption date. The redemption price shall be payable at the Company’s option either in cash or in shares of common stock valued at the higher of (i) \$3.00 per share or (ii) the average market price for the ten consecutive trading days ending immediately prior to the date of redemption. The ROI Percentage shall mean the percentage that applies as of the redemption date, as follows:

### ROI Percentage

200%	before the second anniversary of the date of issuance;
250%	on or after the second anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the third anniversary of the date of issuance;
300%	on or after the third anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the fourth anniversary of the date of issuance;
350%	on or after the fourth anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the fifth anniversary of the date of issuance;
400%	on or after the fifth anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the sixth anniversary of the date of issuance;
450%	on or after the sixth anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the seventh anniversary of the date of issuance;
500%	on or after the seventh anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the eighth anniversary of the date of issuance; and
550%	on or after the eighth anniversary of the date of issuance, but before the ninth anniversary of the date of issuance.

Due to the redemption feature, the Company has presented the Series C outside of permanent equity, in the mezzanine of the consolidated balance sheets at December 31, 2015 and 2014. At December 31, 2015, the Series C redemption value was \$6,487,000.

*Voting Rights.* The Series C shares have no voting rights.

## **6. Warrants**

Warrant activity is summarized as follows:

Outstanding at December 31, 2013	6,035,229
Issued	20,000
Cancelled	(7,500)
Exercised	(576,734)
Outstanding at December 31, 2014	5,470,995
Issued	3,571,425
Cancelled	(133,834)
Exercised	—
Outstanding at December 31, 2015	<u>8,908,586</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table summarizes information with regard to outstanding warrants issued in connection with equity and debt financings and consultants as of December 31, 2015.

<u>Issued in Connection With</u>	<u>Number Issued</u>	<u>Exercise Price</u>	<u>Exercisable Date</u>	<u>Expiration Date</u>
February 12, 2009 Series B-1 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	1,200,000	\$ 3.00	February 12, 2009	February 12, 2019
May 13, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	600,000	\$ 3.00	May 13, 2009	May 13, 2019
June 30, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	333,333	\$ 3.00	June 30, 2009	June 30, 2019
August 12, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	200,000	\$ 3.00	August 12, 2009	August 12, 2019
September 30, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	216,666	\$ 3.00	September 30, 2009	September 30, 2019
November 4, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	206,666	\$ 3.00	November 4, 2009	November 4, 2019
December 8, 2009 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	216,667	\$ 3.00	December 8, 2009	December 8, 2019
January 29, 2010 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	216,667	\$ 3.00	January 29, 2010	January 29, 2020
March 8, 2010 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	223,334	\$ 3.00	March 8, 2010	March 8, 2020
April 30, 2010 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	206,667	\$ 3.00	April 30, 2010	April 30, 2020
May 10, 2010 Series B-2 Transaction				
\$0.50 Investor Warrants—Class B	380,000	\$ 3.00	May 10, 2010	May 10, 2020
March 28, 2012 Offering Warrants	1,317,161	\$ 5.63	March 28, 2012	March 28, 2017
October 30, 2014 Consultant Warrants	20,000	\$ 5.45	October 30, 2014	October 30, 2017
November 25, 2015 Offering Warrants	3,571,425	\$ 2.50	May 25, 2016	May 25, 2021
Total outstanding warrants	<u>8,908,586</u>			

### **Consultant Warrants**

In October 2014, the Company granted warrants to a consultant for the purchase of 20,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$5.45 per share. The warrants were valued at \$76,000 on issuance based on the following assumptions: an expected life of 3 years, volatility of 117%, risk free interest rate of 0.91% and zero dividends. The warrants vested immediately and the Company recognized an expense of \$76,000 related to these warrants during the year ended December 31, 2014. These warrants remain outstanding at December 31, 2015.

### **Offering Warrants**

On March 28, 2012, the Company sold and issued 1,333,361 Units (2,666,722 shares of common stock and related \$5.63 warrants to purchase 1,333,361 shares of common stock) for gross proceeds of \$12.0 million (net cash proceeds of \$10,403,000 after the underwriting discount and offering costs). The warrants were valued at \$4,445,000 as of the issuance date of March 28, 2012, using the closing price of \$4.20, a life of 5 years, a volatility of 119% and a risk free interest rate of 1.05%. Based upon the Company's analysis of the criteria contained in ASC Topic 815-40, "Derivatives and Hedging — Contracts in Entity's Own Equity" the Company has determined that warrants issued in connection with this financing transaction were not derivative liabilities and therefore, were recorded as additional paid-in capital. At December 31, 2015, 1,317,161 of these warrants remain outstanding.

### **Warrants Modification**

On May 6, 2013, the Company modified the terms of the Class A-2 and Class B warrants that were originally issued to the 10X Fund with the Series B Preferred Stock offering. The Class B warrants were

modified to allow for the cashless exercise of all 4,000,000 outstanding Class B warrants. Previously, only half of the Class B warrants allowed for cashless exercise. The Class A-2 warrants for the purchase of 1,000,000 shares of common and all of the Class B warrants had their exercisable life extended by an additional five years. In exchange for these modifications, the 10X Fund agreed to a future amendment of the Company's Series B certificate of designation to remove the redemption provision such that the Series B Preferred Stock will no longer be redeemable, if and when the Company will no longer be required to issue Dr. Platt a promissory note as may currently be required under the separation agreement (see Note 11). Should the Company amend their Series B certificate of designation in the future as described above, the Company will be required at that time to evaluate whether such amendment is to be accounted for as a modification or an extinguishment of the Company's Series B Preferred Stock. The Company has accounted for the modified terms of the Class A-2 and Class B warrants pursuant to ASC 718, Stock Compensation, whereby the Company has recognized a charge for the change in fair value of the warrants immediately before and immediately after the modification. In the second quarter of 2013, the Company recognized a one-time charge of \$8,763,000 related to the extension of the 5,000,000 warrants. The following assumptions were used to value the extension of the warrants immediately before and immediately after the modification: a) immediately before the modification — an expected life range of 0.77 to 2.01 years, volatility range of 77% to 96%, risk free interest rate range of 0.11% to 0.22% and zero dividends and; b) immediately following the modification — an expected life range of 5.78 to 7.02 years, volatility range of 113% to 122%, risk free interest rate range of 0.74% to 1.19% and zero dividends.

## 7. Stock-Based Compensation

### Summary of Stock-Based Compensation Plans

At December 31, 2015, the Company has a stock-based compensation plan where the Company's common stock has been made available for equity-based incentive grants as part of the Company's compensation programs. In February 2009, the Company adopted the 2009 Incentive Compensation Plan (the "2009 Plan") which originally provided for the issuance of up to 3,333,334, which was subsequently increased to 4,733,334 in May 2014, shares of the Company's common stock in the form of options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock and other stock-based awards to employees, officers, directors, consultants and other eligible persons. At December 31, 2015, 1,314,729 shares were available for future grant under the 2009 Plan.

In addition, the Company has awarded 1,477,379 non-plan stock option grants to employees and non-employees. These non-plan grants have vesting periods and expiration dates similar to those options granted under the Incentive Plans. At December 31, 2015, 1,416,669 non-plan grants were outstanding.

### Stock-Based Compensation

Following is the stock-based compensation expense related to common stock options, restricted common stock and common stock warrants:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2015	2014	2013
Research and development	\$1,018	\$1,302	\$ 991
General and administrative	2,382	2,768	2,798
Total stock-based compensation expense	<u>\$3,400</u>	<u>\$4,070</u>	<u>\$3,789</u>

## Table of Contents

The fair value of the options granted is determined using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The following weighted average assumptions were used:

	2015	2014	2013
Risk-free interest rate	1.65%	1.58%	1.17%
Expected life of the options	6 years	6 years	5.29 years
Expected volatility of the underlying stock	101%	114%	115%
Expected dividend rate	0%	0%	0%

As noted above, the fair value of stock options is determined by using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. For all options granted since January 1, 2006 the Company has generally used option terms of between 5 to 10 years, generally with 5 to 6 years representing the estimated life of options granted to employees. The volatility of the common stock is estimated using historical volatility over a period equal to the expected life at the date of grant. The risk-free interest rate used in the Black-Scholes option pricing model is determined by reference to historical U.S. Treasury constant maturity rates with terms equal to the expected terms of the awards. An expected dividend yield of zero is used in the option valuation model, because the Company does not expect to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. At December 31, 2015, the Company does not anticipate any option awards will be forfeited in the calculation of compensation expense due to the limited number of employees that receive stock option grants and the Company's historical employee turnover.

The following table summarizes the stock option activity in the stock based compensation plans:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (in years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Outstanding, December 31, 2012	3,539,961	\$ 5.66		
Granted	425,426	3.89		
Forfeited/Cancelled	(403,674)	14.19		
Exercised	(213,008)	2.18		
Outstanding, December 31, 2013	3,348,705	\$ 4.70		
Granted	354,823	12.72		
Forfeited/Cancelled	(124,466)	3.80		
Exercised	(246,445)	1.97		
Outstanding, December 31, 2014	3,332,617	\$ 5.79		
Granted	454,000	3.23		
Forfeited/Cancelled	(348,718)	4.42		
Exercised	(95,574)	1.80		
Outstanding, December 31, 2015	3,342,325	\$ 5.70	6.30	\$ 0
Exercisable, December 31, 2015	2,541,299	\$ 5.68	5.95	\$ 0

The aggregate intrinsic value in the table above represents the total pre-tax amount, net of exercise price, which would have been received by option holders if all option holders had exercised all options with an exercise price lower than the market price on December 31, 2015, based on the closing price of the Company's common stock of \$1.64 on that date.

The weighted-average grant-date fair values of options granted during 2015, 2014 and 2013 were \$2.57, \$10.75 and \$3.17, respectively. As of December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2014, there were unvested options to purchase 801,026 and 888,140 shares of common stock, respectively. Total expected unrecognized compensation cost related to such unvested options is \$2,440,000 at December 31, 2015, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 1.62 years.

## [Table of Contents](#)

During the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, the Company issued shares totaling 95,574, 246,445, and 213,008, respectively, upon the exercise of options valued at \$146,000, \$411,000 and \$378,000, respectively. During the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, the Company received \$0, \$394,000, and \$271,000, respectively, for the exercise of stock options. During 2015, 2014 and 2013, 212,501, 35,734, and 173,669 options were exercised on a cashless basis resulting in the issuance of 95,574, 26,109, and 81,591 shares, respectively. The intrinsic value of options exercised during the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013 was \$313,000, \$2,677,000, and \$1,498,000, respectively.

During the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, 535,692, 676,335, and 614,041 options became vested, respectively. The total grant date fair value of options vested during the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013 was \$2,753,000, \$3,711,000, and \$2,406,000 respectively.

The following table summarizes additional information regarding outstanding and exercisable options under our stock based compensation plans at December 31, 2015:

Exercise Price (Range)	Options Outstanding			Options Exercisable	
	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (in years)	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price
\$1.80 – 1.83	64,168	5.4	\$ 1.81	64,168	\$ 1.81
\$2.08 – 2.88	911,667	6.3	2.35	729,667	2.25
\$3.45 – 4.41	564,517	8.3	3.82	331,202	3.87
\$6.24 – 7.56	1,485,473	5.2	6.99	1,185,471	7.00
\$13.38	316,500	8.1	13.38	230,791	13.38
	<u>3,342,325</u>	6.3	\$ 5.70	<u>2,541,299</u>	\$ 5.68

The following table summarizes the restricted stock grant activity in the Company's equity incentive plans from December 31, 2014 through December 31, 2015:

	Shares
Outstanding, December 31, 2014	416,670
Granted	337,935
Exercised	—
Options forfeited/cancelled	—
Outstanding, December 31, 2015	<u>754,605</u>

On March 12, 2015, the Company granted 81,352 shares of restricted stock to non-employee directors as a component of their compensation. A total of 77,784 shares were issued to seven directors representing non-cash compensation cost of \$280,000 which will be recognized on a straight-line basis from the grant date through May 21, 2016, when the restricted shares will vest in full. A total of 3,568 shares were issued to two directors, who were not nominated for reelection, representing non-cash compensation cost of \$12,845 that will be recognized on a straight-line basis from the grant date through May 21, 2016, when the restricted shares will vest in full.

On April 8, 2015, the Company granted 177,618 shares of restricted stock to non-employee directors in exchange for cancellation of 222,615 stock options. As the exchange was made at fair value, there was no additional non-cash compensation expense recorded in accordance with FASB ASC 718-20. Additionally, on April 8, 2015, the Company granted 71,378 shares of restricted stock to one non-employee director representing \$236,975 of non-cash compensation expense which will be recorded on a straight-line basis



## [Table of Contents](#)

from grant date to May 21, 2016, when the restricted shares will vest in full. Also, in April and May 2015, the Company granted a total of 7,587 shares of restricted stock to four non-employee directors for service as committee chairs or lead independent director representing \$23,500 of non-cash compensation expense which will be recorded on a straight-line basis from grant date to May 21, 2016, when the restricted shares will vest in full.

### **Other Stock Based Compensation Transactions**

In September 2013, the Company modified certain vested stock options held by a former member of the Company's board of directors. The individual left the board on May 23, 2013. The modification extended the contractual period of exercise of 103,158 stock options until the end of their original terms instead of such options expiring 3 months after service on the board ended. As a result, the Company recorded a one-time, non-cash charge of \$930,000 in general and administrative expenses related to the modification in for the year ended December 31, 2013.

In June 2013, the Company issued 25,000 options to a consultant for consulting services, which vested in August 2013. The options are exercisable at \$3.97 per share. These options were valued using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model based on a grant date fair value of the Company's common stock ranging from \$3.97 per share upon grant to \$7.25 per share at completion of vesting. The Company recorded a \$173,000 charge to stock compensation expense over the vesting period of the options.

In January 2014, the Company entered into an agreement with a consultant that provided for the grant of 8,966 shares of common stock. The Company recognized an expense of \$100,000, representing the fair value of the common stock at issuance, during the year ended December 31, 2014.

In October 2015, the Company entered into an agreement with a consultant that provided for the grant of 30,000 shares of common stock. The Company recognized an expense of \$71,000, representing the fair value of the common stock at issuance, during the fourth quarter of 2015.

## **8. Loss Per Share**

Basic net loss per common share is computed by dividing the net loss available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period. Diluted net loss per common share is computed by dividing the net loss available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares and other potential common shares then outstanding. Potential common shares consist of common shares issuable upon the assumed exercise of in-the-money stock options and warrants and potential common shares related to the conversion of the preferred stock. The computation of diluted net loss per share does not assume the issuance of common shares that have an anti-dilutive effect on net loss per share.

	Year Ended December 31,		
	(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)		
	2015	2014	2013
Net loss	\$(20,027)	\$(15,788)	\$(12,088)
Preferred stock dividends	(868)	(943)	(867)
Preferred stock accretion	(229)	(229)	(229)
Warrant modification	—	—	(8,763)
Net loss applicable to common stockholders	<u>\$(21,124)</u>	<u>\$(16,960)</u>	<u>\$(21,947)</u>
Basic and diluted net loss per share	\$ (0.88)	\$ (0.78)	\$ (1.30)
Shares used in computing basic and diluted net loss per share	24,120	21,849	16,874

## [Table of Contents](#)

Dilutive shares which could exist pursuant to the exercise of outstanding stock instruments and which were not included in the calculation because their affect would have been anti-dilutive are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2015 (Shares)	2014 (Shares)	2013 (Shares)
Warrants to purchase shares of common stock	8,908,586	5,470,995	6,035,229
Options to purchase shares of common stock	3,342,325	3,332,617	3,348,705
Shares of common stock issuable upon conversion preferred stock	2,522,936	2,527,103	2,568,771
	<u>14,807,681</u>	<u>11,330,715</u>	<u>11,952,705</u>

## 9. Commitments and Contingencies

### *Lease Commitments*

In September 2012, the Company entered into an operating lease for office space in Norcross, GA for a term of twenty-six months, beginning on October 1, 2012 and ending November 30, 2014 at a rate of approximately \$3,000 per month. In June 2014, the Company signed an amendment to the lease extending the term through November 30, 2017 with a base monthly rental of approximately \$3,300 through the extended term. The original lease provided for free rent for the first two months of the lease and required a security deposit of \$6,000. In addition to base rental payments included in the contractual obligations table above, the Company is responsible for our pro-rata share of the operating expenses for the building.

Rent expense under this operating lease was \$47,000, \$44,000 and \$39,000 for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively.

Future minimum payments under this lease as of December 31, 2015 are as follows (in thousands):

<u>Year ended December 31,</u>	
2016	40
2017	41
Total	<u>\$81</u>

### *Separation Agreement*

In February 2009, the Company entered into a Separation Agreement in connection with the resignation of David Platt, Ph.D., the Company's former Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors. In July 2014, the Company paid the \$1 million severance obligation.

### *Shareholder Class Actions and Derivative Lawsuits*

Between July 30, 2014, and August 6, 2014, three putative class action complaints were filed in the United States District Court for the District of Nevada (the "Nevada District Court") against the Company and certain of its officers and directors on behalf of all persons who purchased or otherwise acquired the Company's stock between January 6, 2014 and July 28, 2014. The complaints allege that the defendants made false or misleading statements in certain press releases and other public statements in violation of the federal securities laws and seek class certification, unspecified monetary damages, costs, and attorneys' fees. The Company disputes the allegations in the complaints and intends to vigorously defend against the claims. On August 22, 2014, the Nevada District Court entered an order consolidating the three cases, relieving the defendants of any obligation

## [Table of Contents](#)

to respond to the complaints currently on file, and providing that defendants may respond to a consolidated amended complaint after it is filed by a lead plaintiff(s) to be appointed pursuant to the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. On January 5, 2015, the Nevada District Court granted Defendants' motion to transfer the consolidated putative securities class action to the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia. On March 24, 2015, the Court appointed a lead plaintiff ("Plaintiff"). Plaintiff filed his Consolidated Class Action Complaint (the "Complaint") on May 8, 2015. The Complaint asserts claims on behalf of a putative class of all persons who purchased or otherwise acquired the Company's common stock between October 25, 2013 and July 28, 2014. The Complaint alleges that the Company and certain of its officers and directors (the "Class Action Individual Defendants") violated Section 1 O(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the "Exchange Act") and SEC Rule 10b-5 through allegedly false or misleading statements in certain SEC filings, press releases and other public statements. The Complaint further alleges that the Class Action Individual Defendants and one of the Company's shareholders face liability for the alleged Section 1 O(b) and Rule 10b-5 violations pursuant to Section 20(a) of the Exchange Act. The Complaint seeks class certification, unspecified monetary damages, costs, and attorneys' fees. The Company disputes the allegations and filed a motion to dismiss the Complaint on June 26, 2015. On December 30, 2015, the Court dismissed the putative class action with prejudice and entered a final judgment in favor of the defendants. Plaintiff has filed a notice of appeal seeking review of the dismissal order and final judgment.

On August 1 and 25, 2014, persons claiming to be Galectin shareholders filed putative shareholder derivative complaints in the Nevada District Court, seeking recovery on behalf of the Company against certain of the Company's directors and officers. On September 10, 2014, the Nevada District Court entered an order consolidating the two cases, relieving the defendants of any obligation to respond to the initial complaints, and providing that defendants may respond to a consolidated complaint to be filed by the plaintiffs. On January 5, 2015, the Nevada District Court granted Defendants' motion to transfer the consolidated putative derivative litigation to the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia (hereinafter referred to as the "Georgia Federal Derivative Action.") The plaintiffs filed a consolidated complaint on February 27, 2015. On April 6, 2015, the Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the consolidated complaint. Rather than respond to those motions, the plaintiffs sought and obtained leave to file an amended complaint. Plaintiffs filed their amended complaint (the "Complaint") on May 26, 2015. The Complaint alleges that certain of the Company's directors and officers (the "Derivative Action Individual Defendants") breached their fiduciary duties to the Company's shareholders by causing or permitting the Company to make allegedly false and misleading public statements concerning the Company's financial and business prospects. The Complaint also alleges that the Derivative Action Individual Defendants violated the federal securities laws by allegedly making false or misleading statements of material fact in the Company's proxy filings, committed waste of corporate assets, were unjustly enriched, and that certain defendants breached their fiduciary duties through allegedly improper sales of Galectin stock. In addition, the Complaint alleges that the Derivative Action Individual Defendants and one of the Company's shareholders aided and abetted the alleged breaches of fiduciary duties. The Complaint seeks unspecified monetary damages on behalf of the Company, corporate governance reforms, disgorgement of profits, benefits and compensation by the defendants, costs, and attorneys' and experts' fees. The Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the Complaint on July 8, 2015. On December 30, 2015, the United States District Court for the Northern District of Georgia dismissed the Georgia Federal Derivative Action with prejudice and entered a final judgment in favor of the defendants. Plaintiffs have filed a notice of appeal seeking review of the dismissal order and final judgment.

On August 29, 2014, another alleged Galectin shareholder filed a putative shareholder derivative complaint in state court in Las Vegas, Nevada, seeking recovery on behalf of the Company against the same Galectin directors and officers who are named as defendants in the derivative litigation pending in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. The plaintiff in the Nevada action subsequently filed first and second amended complaints. The second amended complaint alleges claims for breach of fiduciary duties, unjust enrichment, and waste of corporate assets, based on allegations that are substantially similar to those asserted in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action (except that the Nevada action does not allege violations of the federal securities laws and does not assert any claim against the Galectin shareholder named as a defendant in the Georgia Federal

## [Table of Contents](#)

Derivative Action), and seeks unspecified monetary damages on behalf of the Company, corporate governance reforms, disgorgement of profits, benefits and compensation by the defendants, costs, and attorneys' and experts' fees. The Company and defendants filed motions to dismiss the second amended complaint on April 22, 2015. On April 29, 2015, the plaintiffs in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action filed a motion to intervene in the Nevada action which, among other things, raised questions regarding the Nevada plaintiffs standing. Thereafter, the Nevada plaintiff filed a motion to join additional plaintiffs. At a hearing held on June 11, 2015, the Nevada court: (i) granted the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs' motion to intervene; (ii) directed the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs to file a complaint in intervention; (iii) directed the Nevada plaintiff to file a motion for leave to file a further amended complaint to add additional plaintiffs; (iv) stated that the defendants' motions to dismiss the second amended complaint were denied "at this point;" (v) ordered the Nevada action stayed until December 11, 2015; and (vi) directed the parties to submit a status report on December 11, 2015, updating the court on the progress and status of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. On July 9, 2015, pursuant to the Nevada State Court's instruction, the Georgia Federal Derivative Action plaintiffs filed a complaint-in-intervention in Nevada State Court, asserting similar claims to the ones they alleged in the Georgia Federal Derivative Action described above. On December 11, 2015, further to the Nevada State Court's instruction, the parties submitted status reports detailing the status of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action. On January 5, 2016, the Nevada State Court held a status conference during which the dismissal of the Georgia Federal Derivative Action was discussed. Subsequent to that conference, on January 19, 2016, the defendants filed a motion to dismiss the Nevada State Court litigation based on the dismissal of the similar Georgia Federal Derivative Action, among other grounds. Defendants' motion to dismiss was fully briefed to the Nevada court in February 2016. At a hearing on March 3, 2016, the Nevada State Court granted dismissal of the Nevada State Court litigation pending entry of a final order of dismissal. Once the final order of dismissal is entered, plaintiffs will have 30 days to appeal.

Estimating an amount or range of possible losses resulting from litigation proceedings is inherently difficult and requires an extensive degree of judgment, particularly where the matters involve indeterminate claims for monetary damages, are in the early stages of the proceedings, and are subject to appeal. In addition, because most legal proceedings are resolved over extended periods of time, potential losses are subject to change due to, among other things, new developments, changes in legal strategy, the outcome of intermediate procedural and substantive rulings and other parties' settlement posture and their evaluation of the strength or weakness of their case against us. For these reasons, we are currently unable to predict the ultimate timing or outcome of, or reasonably estimate the possible losses or a range of possible losses resulting from, the matters described above. Based on information currently available, the Company does not believe that any reasonably possible losses arising from currently pending legal matters will be material to the Company's results of operations or financial condition. However, in light of the inherent uncertainties involved in such matters, an adverse outcome in one or more of these matters could materially and adversely affect the Company's financial condition, results of operations or cash flows in any particular reporting period.

### ***Other Legal Proceedings***

The Company records accruals for such contingencies to the extent that the Company concludes that their occurrence is probable and the related damages are estimable. There are no other pending legal proceedings except as noted above.

## **10. Galectin Sciences LLC**

In January 2014, we created Galectin Sciences, LLC (the "LLC" or "Investee"), a collaborative joint venture co-owned by SBH Sciences, Inc. ("SBH"), to research and develop small organic molecule inhibitors of galectin-3 for oral administration. The LLC was initially capitalized with a \$400,000 cash investment to fund future research and development activities, which was provided by the Company, and specific in-process research and development ("IPR&D") contributed by SBH. The estimated fair value of the IPR&D contributed by SBH, on the date of contribution, was \$400,000. Initially, the Company and SBH have a 50%

## [Table of Contents](#)

equity ownership interest in the LLC, with neither party having control over the LLC. Accordingly from inception through the fourth quarter of 2014, the Company accounted for its investment in the LLC using the equity method of accounting. Under the equity method of accounting, the Company's investment was initially recorded at cost with subsequent adjustments to the carrying value to recognize additional investments in or distributions from the Investee, as well as the Company's share of the Investee's earnings, losses and/or changes in capital. The estimated fair value of the IPR&D contributed to the LLC was immediately expensed upon contribution as there was no alternative future use available at the point of contribution. The operating agreement provides that if either party does not desire to contribute its equal share of funding required after the initial capitalization, then the other party, providing all of the funding, will have its ownership share increased in proportion to the total amount contributed from inception. In the fourth quarter of 2014, after the LLC had expended the \$400,000 in cash, SBH decided not to contribute its share of the funding required. As a result, the Company contributed the \$73,000 needed for the fourth quarter of 2014 expenses of the LLC. As a result, the Company's ownership percentage in the LLC was 54.2% at December 31, 2014. The Company contributed \$687,000 for the LLC expenses in 2015 adjusting the Company's ownership percentage to 74.7% at December 31, 2015. The Company accounts for the interest in the LLC as a consolidated, less than wholly owned subsidiary. Because the LLC's equity is immaterial, the value of the non-controlling interest is also deemed to be immaterial. The Company's portion of the LLC's net loss for 2014, prior to the change in accounting discussed previously, was \$400,000, which includes the Company's proportionate share of the non-cash charge associated with the contributed IPR&D of \$200,000.

### 11. Income Taxes

The components of the net deferred tax assets are as follows at December 31:

	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Operating loss carryforwards	\$ 37,152	\$ 30,578
Tax credit carryforwards	1,195	645
Other temporary differences	5,048	4,689
	43,395	35,912
Less valuation allowance	(43,395)	(35,912)
Net deferred tax asset	\$ —	\$ —

The primary factors affecting the Company's income tax rates were as follows:

	2015	2014	2013
Tax benefit at U.S. statutory rates	(34%)	(34%)	(34%)
State tax benefit	(5%)	(5.3%)	(5.3%)
Permanent differences	2.6%	5.4%	0.9%
Expiring state NOL's	0.9%	1.4%	1.8%
Changes in valuation allowance	35.5%	32.5%	36.6%
	0%	0%	0%

As of December 31, 2015, the Company has federal and state net operating loss carryforwards totaling \$99,642,000 and \$60,459,000 respectively, which expire through 2034. The net operating losses include Federal and State excess benefits related to stock options of \$707,000 that will be charged to additional paid-in capital when utilized. In addition, the Company has federal and state research and development credits of \$998,000 and \$196,000, respectively, which expire through 2034. Ownership changes, as defined by Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code, may have limited the amount of net operating loss carryforwards that can be utilized annually to offset future taxable income. Subsequent ownership changes

## [Table of Contents](#)

could further affect the limitation in future years. Because of the Company's limited operating history and its recorded losses, management has provided, in each of the last two years, a 100% valuation allowance against the Company's net deferred tax assets.

The Company is subject to taxation in the U.S. and various states. Based on the history of net operating losses all jurisdictions and tax years are open for examination until the operating losses are utilized or the statute of limitations expires. As of December 31, 2015 and 2014, the Company does not have any significant uncertain tax positions.

### 12. Subsequent Events

On January 6, 2016, the Company's Board of Directors terminated the employment of its executive chairman in connection with electing a new non-executive chairman of the Board. Accordingly in January 2016, the Company recorded the severance obligation of \$250,000 and non-cash stock compensation due to the acceleration of stock options of \$578,000.

### 13. Quarterly financial data (unaudited)

<u>(In thousands except per share data)</u>	<u>2015 Quarters ended</u>			
	<u>December 31</u>	<u>September 30</u>	<u>June 30</u>	<u>March 31</u>
Net loss	\$ (4,671)	\$ (5,887)	\$ (4,643)	\$ (4,826)
Net loss applicable to common stockholders	(4,967)	(6,152)	(4,931)	(5,074)
Basic and diluted net loss per share	\$ (0.19)	\$ (0.26)	\$ (0.21)	\$ (0.22)

<u>(In thousands except per share data)</u>	<u>2014 Quarters ended</u>			
	<u>December 31</u>	<u>September 30</u>	<u>June 30</u>	<u>March 31</u>
Net loss	\$ (3,731)	\$ (3,518)	\$ (3,429)	\$ (5,110)
Net loss applicable to common stockholders	(3,968)	(3,853)	(3,731)	(5,408)
Basic and diluted net loss per share	\$ (0.17)	\$ (0.17)	\$ (0.17)	\$ (0.27)

**AMENDED AND RESTATED BYLAWS  
OF  
GALECTIN THERAPEUTICS INC**

**ARTICLE 1  
OFFICES**

Section 1.1 Principal Office. Galectin Therapeutics Inc (the “**Corporation**”) will maintain its principal office within or without the State of Nevada as the Board of Directors (the “**Board**”) may determine from time to time.

Section 1.2 Registered Office and Other Offices. The registered office of the Corporation in Nevada shall be that of its registered agent most recently appointed in the Articles (as defined in Section 1.3), or as evidenced by a certificate of acceptance executed by a registered agent and filed with the Secretary of State of Nevada in the manner prescribed by the Nevada Revised Statutes (“**NRS**”). The Corporation may also maintain offices at such other place or places, either within or without the State of Nevada, as may be designated from time to time by the Board, where the business of the Corporation may be transacted with the same effect as though done at the principal office.

Section 1.3 Records. The Corporation will keep and maintain at its registered office a certified copy of its articles of incorporation and all amendments thereto (the “**Articles**”) and a certified copy of these bylaws and all amendments hereto (the “**Bylaws**”). The Corporation will also keep at its registered office a stock ledger or duplicate stock ledger, revised annually, containing the names, alphabetically arranged, of all stockholders of the Corporation, showing their places of residence, if known, and the number of shares held by them respectively, or a statement setting out the name of the custodian of the stock ledger or duplicate stock ledger, and the present and complete post office address, including street and number, if any, where such stock ledger or duplicate ledger is kept.

**ARTICLE 2  
STOCKHOLDERS**

Section 2.1 Stockholders’ Meetings. All meetings of stockholders will be held at such places as may be fixed from time to time by the Board, or in the absence of direction by the Board, by the President or Secretary, either within or without the State of Nevada, as will be stated in the notice of the meeting or in a duly executed waiver of notice thereof. If authorized by the Board, in its sole discretion and subject to such guidelines and procedures as the Board may adopt, stockholders may participate in a meeting of stockholders, whether annual or special, through electronic communications, videoconferencing, teleconferencing, or other available technology which allows the stockholders to communicate simultaneously or sequentially. Such participation in a meeting will constitute presence in person at the meeting.

Section 2.2 Annual Meetings. Annual meetings of stockholders will be held each year on a date and at a time to be designated by the Board. Stockholders will, at the annual meeting, elect the directors to serve on the Board and transact such other business as properly may be brought before the meeting.

Section 2.3 Special Meetings of Stockholders. Special meetings of the stockholders, for any purpose or purposes, unless otherwise prescribed by statute or by the Articles, may be called by the President and will be called by the President or Secretary at the request in writing of a majority of the Board. Such request will state the purpose or purposes of the proposed meeting.

Section 2.4 List of Stockholders. The Transfer Agent (as defined in Section 6.4) or, if a Transfer Agent has not been appointed, the Secretary, will prepare, and make, at least ten (10) days before every meeting of stockholders, a complete list of the stockholders entitled to vote at the meeting, arranged in alphabetical order, and showing the address of each stockholder and the number of shares registered in the name of each stockholder. Such list is not required to include stockholders' electronic email addresses or facsimile numbers. Such list will be open to the examination of any stockholder, for any purpose germane to the meeting, during ordinary business hours, for a period of at least ten (10) days prior to the meeting, either at a place within the city where the meeting is to be held, which place will be specified in the notice of the meeting, or, if not so specified, at the place where the meeting is to be held. The list will also be produced and kept at the time and place of the meeting during the whole time thereof and may be inspected by any stockholder who is present.

Section 2.5 Notice of Meetings.

(a) Written notice stating the time and place of any meeting of the stockholders will be delivered to each stockholder of record entitled to vote at such meeting not less than ten (10) nor more than sixty (60) days before the date of the meeting.

(b) In the case of an annual meeting, the notice of meeting need not specifically state the purpose or purposes for which the meeting is called. In the case of a special meeting, the notice of meeting shall specifically state the purpose or purposes for which the meeting is called.

(c) If a meeting is adjourned for sixty (60) days or more after the date fixed for the original meeting, notice of the adjourned meeting will be given as in the case of an original meeting. When a meeting is adjourned for a period of less than sixty (60) days in any one adjournment, it is not necessary to give any notice of the date, time, or place of the adjourned meeting other than by announcement at the meeting at which the adjournment is taken, unless a new record date is set for the meeting.

(d) If mailed, such notice shall be deemed to be delivered when deposited in the United States mail, addressed to the stockholder at his, her, or its address as it appears on the record of stockholders of the Corporation, with postage prepaid.

(e) Without limiting the manner by which notice otherwise may be given to stockholders, any notice to a stockholder may be given by a form of electronic transmission consented to by the stockholder to whom the notice is given and in the manner prescribed in NRS Section 78.370, as amended. Any such consent may be revoked by the stockholder by written or electronic notice to the Corporation. Any such consent will be deemed revoked if: (i) the Corporation is unable to deliver two (2) consecutive electronic transmissions given by the Corporation in accordance with such consent; and (ii) such inability becomes known to the Secretary or the Transfer Agent or other person responsible for giving of notice or other communications; provided, however, that the inadvertent failure to treat such inability as a revocation shall not invalidate any meeting or other action. For purposes of this Section 2.5(e), "electronic transmission" means facsimile transmission,



electronic mail, posting on an electronic network, or any form of communication, not directly involving the physical transmission of paper or other tangible medium, which is suitable for the retention, retrieval, and reproduction of information by the recipient, and which is retrievable and reproducible in paper form by the recipient through an automated process used in conventional commercial practice. An affidavit of the Secretary or the Transfer Agent or any other agent of the Corporation that the notice has been given, whether by a form of electronic transmission or otherwise, shall, in the absence of fraud, be *prima facie* evidence of the facts stated therein.

Section 2.6 Waiver of Notice. Attendance of a stockholder at a meeting, in person or by proxy, will constitute waiver of notice of such meeting, except when the stockholder attends the meeting for the express purpose of objecting to the transaction of any business because the meeting is not lawfully called or convened and so objects at the beginning of the meeting. Any stockholder may waive notice of any annual or special meeting of stockholders by executing a written waiver of notice either before or after the time of the meeting.

Section 2.7 Fixing of Record Date.

(a) For the purpose of determining the stockholders entitled to notice of and to vote at any meeting of stockholders or any adjournment thereof, or entitled to receive payment of any distribution or the allotment of any rights, or entitled to exercise any rights in respect of any change, conversion, or exchange of stock or for the purpose of any other lawful action, the directors may fix, in advance, a record date, which shall not be more than sixty (60) days nor less than ten (10) days before the date of such meeting, if applicable. When a determination of stockholders entitled to vote at any meeting of stockholders has been made as provided in this Section 2.7, such determination will, unless otherwise provided by the Board, also apply to any adjournment thereof.

(b) If no record date is fixed, the record date for determining stockholders: (i) entitled to notice of and to vote at a meeting of stockholders shall be at the close of business on the day next preceding the day on which notice is given, or, if notice is waived, at the close of business on the day next preceding the day on which the meeting is held; and (ii) for any other purpose shall be at the close of business on the day on which the Board adopts the resolution relating thereto. A determination of stockholders of record entitled to notice of or to vote at any meeting of stockholders shall apply to any adjournment of the meeting; provided, however, that the Board may fix a new record date for the adjourned meeting and must fix a new record date if the meeting is adjourned to a date more than sixty (60) days later than the date set for the original meeting.

Section 2.8 Quorum and Adjournment. The holders of at least one-third (1/3) of the voting power of all classes and series of stock entitled to vote at the meeting, present in person or by proxy, regardless of whether the proxy has authority to vote on all matters, will constitute a quorum at all meetings of the stockholders for the transaction of business except as otherwise provided by the NRS or by the Articles. Once a quorum is established at any meeting of the stockholders, the voluntary withdrawal of any stockholder from the meeting shall not affect the authority of the remaining stockholders to conduct any business which properly comes before the meeting. If, however, such quorum is not present or represented at any meeting of the stockholders, the stockholders entitled to vote at the meeting, present in person or represented by proxy, will have the power to adjourn the meeting from time to time, without notice other than announcement at the meeting, until a quorum is present or represented by proxy. At such adjourned meeting at which a quorum is present or represented by proxy any business may be transacted which might have been transacted at the

meeting as originally notified. If the adjournment is for more than sixty (60) days, or if after the adjournment a new record date is fixed for the adjourned meeting, a notice of the adjourned meeting will be given to each stockholder of record entitled to vote at the meeting.

Section 2.9 Nominations for Director.

(a) Only persons who are nominated in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.9 will be eligible for election to the Board. Nominations of persons for election to the Board at a meeting of the stockholders at which directors are being elected may be made (i) by or at the direction of the Board or (ii) by any stockholder of the Corporation entitled to vote for the election of directors at such meeting who complies with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.9. Such nominations by any stockholder must be made pursuant to timely notice in proper written form to the Secretary.

(b) To be timely, a stockholder's notice must be delivered to or mailed to and received by the Secretary at the principal office of the Corporation not less than ninety (90) days nor more than one hundred twenty (120) days in advance of the first anniversary of the preceding year's annual meeting; provided, however, that in the event that (i) no annual meeting was held in the previous year or (ii) the date of the annual meeting has been changed by more than thirty (30) days from the date of the previous year's meeting, or in the event of a special meeting of stockholders called for the purpose of electing directors, not later than the close of business on the 10<sup>th</sup> day following the day on which notice of the date of the meeting was mailed or public disclosure of the date of the meeting was made, whichever occurs first. In no event will the public disclosure of an adjournment or postponement of a stockholders meeting commence a new time period for the giving of a stockholders notice as described above.

(c) To be in proper written form, a stockholder's notice to the Secretary must set forth in writing: (i) as to each person whom such stockholder proposes to nominate for election or re-election as a director, all information relating to such person that is required to be disclosed in solicitations of proxies for election of directors, or is otherwise required, in each case pursuant to Regulation 14A under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**"), including, without limitation, such person's written consent to being named in the proxy statement as a nominee and to serving as director if elected as well as (A) such person's name, age, business address and residence address, (B) his or her principal occupation or employment, (C) the class and number of shares of the Corporation that are beneficially owned by such person, and (D) a description of all arrangements or understandings between the stockholder and each nominee and any other person or persons (naming such person or persons) pursuant to which the nominations are to be made by the stockholder; and (ii) as to such stockholder (A) the name and address, as they appear on the Corporation's books, of such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made, and (B) the class and number of shares of the Corporation which are beneficially owned by such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made, and any material interest of such stockholder and owner. At the request of the Board, any person nominated by the Board for election as a director will furnish to the Secretary the information required to be set forth in a stockholder's notice of nomination which pertains to the nominee.

(d) No person will be eligible for election by the stockholders as a director unless nominated in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.9. The chairman of the meeting will, if the facts warrant, determine and declare at the meeting that a nomination was not made in accordance with the procedures prescribed in this Section 2.9, and if he or she so determines, he or she will so declare at the meeting that the defective nomination will be disregarded.

## Section 2.10 Stockholder Proposals.

(a) At any special meeting of the stockholders, only such business will be conducted as has been brought before the meeting by or at the direction of the Board.

(b) At any annual meeting of the stockholders, only such business will be conducted as has been brought before the meeting (i) specified in the notice of meeting (or any supplement thereto) given by or at the direction of the Board, (ii) otherwise properly brought before the meeting by or at the direction of the Board, or (iii) by any stockholder who complies with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.10.

(c) For business to be properly brought before an annual meeting by a stockholder, the stockholder must give timely notice thereof in proper written form to the Secretary and such business must otherwise be a proper matter for stockholder action.

(d) To be timely, a stockholder's notice must be delivered to or mailed to and received by the Secretary at the principal office of the Corporation not less than ninety (90) days nor more than one hundred twenty (120) days in advance of the first anniversary of the preceding year's annual meeting; provided, however, that in the event that (i) no annual meeting was held in the previous year or (ii) the date of the annual meeting has been changed by more than thirty (30) days before or after the date of the previous year's meeting, not later than the close of business on the 10<sup>th</sup> day following the day on which notice of the date of the meeting was mailed or public disclosure of the date of the meeting was made, whichever occurs first. In no event will the public disclosure of an adjournment or postponement of a stockholders meeting commence a new time period for the giving of a stockholders notice as described above.

(e) To be in proper written form, a stockholder's notice to the Secretary must set forth in writing as to each matter such stockholder proposes to bring before the annual meeting: (i) a brief description of the business desired to be brought before the meeting; (ii) the name and address, as they appear on the Corporation's books, of the stockholder proposing such business, and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made; (iii) the text of the proposal or business (including the text of any resolutions proposed for consideration) and the reasons for conducting such business at the meeting; (iv) the class and number of shares of the Corporation which are owned beneficially by such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made; (v) any material interest in such business of the stockholder or the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made; (vi) any other information that is required to be provided by the stockholder pursuant to Regulation 14A under the Exchange Act in such stockholder's capacity as a proponent of a stockholder proposal; (vii) a representation that the stockholder is a holder of record of stock of the Corporation entitled to vote at such meeting and intends to appear in person or by proxy at the meeting to propose such business; and (viii) a representation whether the stockholder or the beneficial owner, if any, intends or is part of a group which intends (A) to deliver a proxy statement and/or form of proxy to holders of at least the percentage of the Corporation's outstanding capital stock required to approve or adopt the proposal or (B) otherwise to solicit proxies from stockholders in support of such proposal. The foregoing notice requirements will be deemed satisfied by a stockholder if the stockholder has notified the Corporation of his, her, or its intention to present a proposal at an annual meeting in compliance with

Rule 14a-8 (or any successor thereof) promulgated under the Exchange Act and such stockholder's proposal has been included in a proxy statement that has been prepared by the Corporation to solicit proxies for such annual meeting.

(f) No business will be conducted at an annual meeting except in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.10. The chairman of an annual meeting will, if the facts warrant, determine and declare at the meeting that business was not properly brought before the meeting in accordance with the provisions of this Section 2.10, and, if he or she should so determine, he or she shall so declare at the meeting that any such business not properly brought before the meeting will not be transacted.

Section 2.11 Public Disclosure; Conduct of Nominations, and Proposals by Stockholders.

(a) For purposes of Sections 2.9 and 2.10, "public disclosure" means disclosure in a press release reported by the Dow Jones News Service, Associated Press, Reuters or any comparable national news service or in a document publicly filed or furnished by the Corporation with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Section 13, 14, or 15(d) of the Exchange Act.

(b) Notwithstanding Sections 2.9 and 2.10, if the stockholder (or a representative of the stockholder) does not appear at the annual meeting to present a nomination or proposal, such nomination and proposal will be disregarded, notwithstanding that proxies in respect of such vote may have been received by the Corporation.

(c) Without limiting Sections 2.9 and 2.10, a stockholder will also comply with all applicable requirements of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder with respect to the matters set forth in Sections 2.9 and 2.10. Nothing in Sections 2.9 or 2.10 will affect any rights of stockholders to request inclusion of proposals in the Corporation's proxy statement pursuant to Rule 14a-8 under the Exchange Act.

Section 2.12 Conduct of Meetings. The President, or any person so designated by the President, or if the President is absent, did not so designate, or otherwise is unable to so serve, any Vice President, will chair all meetings of the stockholders. The Secretary or, in his or her absence, such other person as the chairman of the meeting may designate, will serve as secretary of the meeting. The chairman of the meeting will conduct all meetings of the stockholders in accordance with the best interests of the Corporation and will have the authority and discretion to establish reasonable procedural rules for the conduct of such meetings, including such regulation of the manner of voting and the conduct of discussion as he or she deems appropriate.

Section 2.13 Voting; Proxies.

(a) Each stockholder entitled to vote at any meeting may vote either in person or by proxy. Unless otherwise specified in the Articles or in resolutions of the Board providing for the issuance of different classes or series of shares, each stockholder entitled to vote will be entitled to one (1) vote for each share of capital stock registered in his, her, or its name on the transfer books or records of the Corporation.

(b) Except as otherwise provided herein, all votes with respect to shares standing in the name of an individual at the close of business on the record date (including pledged shares) shall be cast only by that individual or such individual's duly authorized proxy. With respect to shares held by a representative of the estate of a deceased stockholder, or a guardian, conservator, custodian or

trustee, even though the shares do not stand in the name of such holder, votes may be cast by such holder upon proof of such representative capacity. In the case of shares under the control of a receiver, the receiver may cast votes carried by such shares even though the shares do not stand of record in the name of the receiver; provided, that the order of a court of competent jurisdiction which appoints the receiver contains the authority to cast votes carried by such shares. If shares stand of record in the name of a minor, votes may be cast by the duly appointed guardian of the estate of such minor only if such guardian has provided the Corporation with written proof of such appointment.

(c) With respect to shares standing of record in the name of another corporation, partnership, limited liability company or other legal entity on the record date, votes may be cast: (i) in the case of a corporation, by such individual as the bylaws of such other corporation prescribe, by such individual as may be appointed by resolution of the Board of Directors of such other corporation or by such individual (including, without limitation, the officer making the authorization) authorized in writing to do so by the chairman of the board, if any, president, chief executive officer, if any, or any vice president of such corporation; and (ii) in the case of a partnership, limited liability company or other legal entity, by an individual representing such stockholder upon presentation to the Corporation of satisfactory evidence of his or her authority to do so.

(d) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein and except for the Corporation's shares held in a fiduciary capacity, the Corporation shall not vote, directly or indirectly, shares of its own stock owned by it; and such shares shall not be counted in determining the total number of outstanding shares entitled to vote.

(e) Any holder of shares entitled to vote on any matter may cast a portion of the votes in favor of such matter and refrain from casting the remaining votes or cast the same against the proposal, except in the case of elections of directors. If such holder entitled to vote does vote any of such stockholder's shares affirmatively and fails to specify the number of affirmative votes, it will be conclusively presumed that the holder is casting affirmative votes with respect to all shares held.

(f) With respect to shares standing of record in the name of two (2) or more persons, whether fiduciaries, members of a partnership, joint tenants, tenants in common, husband and wife as community property, tenants by the entirety, voting trustees or otherwise and shares held by two (2) or more persons (including proxy holders) having the same fiduciary relationship in respect to the same shares, votes may be cast in the following manner: (i) if only one (1) person votes, the vote of such person binds all; (ii) if more than one (1) person casts votes, the act of the majority so voting binds all; and (iii) if more than one (1) person casts votes, but the vote is evenly split on a particular matter, the votes shall be deemed cast proportionately, as split.

(g) Each stockholder entitled to vote may authorize another person or persons to act for his, her, or it by proxy. All proxies must be in writing, signed by the stockholder or by his, her, or its duly authorized attorney-in-fact, and will be filed with the Secretary before being voted; provided, that no proxy will be valid after six (6) months from the date of its execution unless the person executing it specifies in it the length of time for which it is to continue in force, which in no event will exceed seven (7) years. A duly executed proxy is not revoked and will continue in full force and effect until another instrument or transmission revoking it or a properly created proxy bearing a later date is filed with or transmitted to the Secretary. The mere attendance at a meeting by a stockholder who has previously given a proxy applicable to such meeting will not constitute a revocation of such proxy.

(h) Except for the election of directors or as otherwise provided by applicable law, the Articles, or these Bylaws, at all meetings of stockholders, action by the stockholders on a matter is approved if the number of votes cast in favor of the action exceeds the number of votes cast in opposition to the action.

(i) Except as otherwise required by applicable law or the Articles, a director will be elected to the Board only if such director receives the affirmative vote of the majority of shares of capital stock present in person or represented by a proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote for the election of directors. In the event the number of directors receiving the affirmative vote of such majority of shares at such meeting exceeds the number of then available director positions, then, of such directors receiving the affirmative vote of such majority of shares at such meeting, those directors with a plurality of the votes cast shall be elected to the Board. Cumulative voting for directors will not be required or permitted.

Section 2.14 Inspectors of Election. In advance of any meeting of stockholders, the Board will appoint one (1) or more persons, other than officers, directors, or nominees for office, as inspectors of election to act at such meeting or any adjournment thereof. Such appointment will not be altered at the meeting. If inspectors of election are not so appointed, the chairman of the meeting will make such appointment at the meeting. If any person appointed as inspector fails to appear or fails or refuses to act at the meeting, the vacancy so created may be filled by appointment by the Board in advance of the meeting or at the meeting by the chairman of the meeting. The duties of the inspectors of election will include determining the number of shares outstanding and the voting power of each; determining the shares represented at the meeting; determining the existence of a quorum; determining the validity and effect of proxies; receiving votes, ballots, or consents; hearing and deciding all challenges and questions arising in connection with the right to vote; counting and tabulating all votes, ballots, or consents; determining the results of any election, vote, or other determination; and doing such acts as are proper to the conduct of the election or the vote with fairness to all stockholders. Any report or certificate made by them will be *prima facie* evidence of the facts stated and of the vote as certified by them. Each inspector will be entitled to a reasonable compensation for his or her services, to be paid by the Corporation.

Section 2.15 Action Without Meeting. Any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of stockholders may be taken without a meeting, without prior notice, and without a vote, if a consent in writing, setting forth the action so taken, is signed by the holders of a majority of the voting power of all classes and series of stock entitled to vote with respect to the subject matter of the action, except that if any greater proportion of voting power is required for such an action at a meeting, then the greater proportion of written consents is required. Such written consents will be delivered to the Secretary. Every written consent must bear the date of signature of each stockholder who signs the consent. No written consent will be effective unless it is delivered, with signatures of stockholders holding sufficient shares to authorize or take such action, to the Secretary within sixty (60) days after the earliest dated signature on such consent. In no instance where action is authorized by written consent need a meeting of stockholders be called or notice given.

### **ARTICLE 3** **BOARD OF DIRECTORS**

Section 3.1 General Powers. The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed under the direction of the Board except as otherwise provided by the Articles or by applicable law.

Section 3.2 Number, Term, and Qualification. The number of directors on the Board will be determined from time to time by resolution adopted by the Board. In the absence of such resolution, the number of directors elected at the meeting shall constitute the number of directors of the Corporation until the next annual meeting of stockholders, unless the number is changed prior to such meeting by action of the Board. Unless otherwise required or permitted by applicable law, a majority of the members of the Board must be Independent Directors (as defined in Section 4.4). Each director's term shall expire at the annual meeting next following the director's election as a director; provided, that, notwithstanding the expiration of the term of the director, the director shall continue to hold office until a successor is elected and qualifies or until his death, resignation, retirement, removal, or disqualification or until there is a decrease in the number of directors. Directors need not be residents of the State of Nevada or stockholders of the Corporation. No decrease in the number of directors constituting the Board shall shorten the term of any incumbent directors.

Section 3.3 Removal. Directors may be removed from office with or without cause, at an annual or special meeting of the stockholders upon a vote of stockholders holding at least two-thirds (2/3) of the voting power of all classes and series of stock entitled to vote at such meeting. The notice of the stockholders' meeting at which such action is to be taken must state that a purpose of the meeting is removal of the director.

Section 3.4 Vacancies. A vacancy occurring on the Board, including, without limitation, a vacancy resulting from death, resignation, retirement, removal, disqualification, an increase in the number of directors, or from the failure by the stockholders to elect the full authorized number of directors, may be filled by a majority vote of the remaining directors or by the sole director remaining in office, in either case though less than a quorum.

Section 3.5 Compensation. The Corporation may compensate directors for their service on the Board as such and may provide for the payment of expenses incurred by the directors in connection with such services. Any director may serve the Corporation in any other capacity and receive compensation therefor.

Section 3.6 Chairman and Vice Chairman of the Board. The chairman of the Board (the "**Chairman of the Board**") and vice chairman of the Board (the "**Vice Chairman of the Board**") will be elected by the Board, the Chairman of the Board, or if the Chairman of the Board is unable to attend the meeting or if the Chairman of the Board is not then an Independent Director and a meeting on the Independent Directors is called, the Vice Chairman of the Board, will preside at meetings of the Board, and each shall have such other authority and perform such other duties as the Board may designate.

Section 3.7 Place of Meetings; Meetings by Telephone. The Board may hold meetings, both regular and special, either within or outside the State of Nevada. Members of the Board or any committee designated by the Board may participate in a meeting of the Board or committee through electronic communications, videoconferencing, teleconferencing or other available technology which allows the stockholders to communicate simultaneously or sequentially. Such participation in a meeting will constitute presence in person at the meeting.

Section 3.8 Regular Meetings. Regular meetings of the Board may be held without notice at such date, time, and place as the Board will determine from time to time.

Section 3.9 Special Meetings; Notice. Special meetings of the Board may be called at any time by the Chairman of the Board, the President, or any two (2) directors. Notice of the date, time, and place of special meetings of the Board will be delivered personally, by first class mail, overnight courier, telephone, facsimile, or electronic mail to each director at that director's address as shown on the records of the Corporation.

Section 3.10 Waiver of Notice. Notice of the date, time, place, and purpose of any meeting of directors may be waived in writing, signed by the person entitled to notice, either before or after such meeting, and a director's attendance at a meeting waives objection to lack of notice or defective notice of the meeting, unless the director at the beginning of the meeting objects to holding the meeting or transacting business at the meeting because the meeting is not lawfully called or convened. Neither of the business to be transacted at, nor the purpose of, any regular or special meeting of the directors, or members of a committee of directors, need to be specified in a written waiver of notice.

Section 3.11 Quorum; Vote. Except as otherwise provided by applicable law, at all meetings of the Board, a majority of the authorized number of directors will constitute a quorum for the transaction of business and the vote of a majority of the directors present at any meeting at which there is a quorum will be the act of the Board. If a quorum is present at the call of a meeting, the directors may continue to transact business until adjournment notwithstanding the withdrawal of enough directors to leave less than a quorum. In the event of a tie vote of the Board and one (1) or more directors is absent from the meeting, the matter will be deferred until the next meeting of the Board. In the event of a tie vote and all directors have participated in the meeting and have voted or abstained from voting, the Chairman of the Board will cast an additional vote and the matter will be approved or disapproved based upon such vote. In the event the Chairman of the Board has abstained from voting on the issue, the matter will be deemed disapproved due to the matter failing to obtain a majority of affirmative votes.

Section 3.12 Adjourned Meeting; Notice. If a quorum is not present at any meeting of the Board, then the directors present at the meeting may adjourn the meeting from time to time without notice other than announcement at the meeting, until a quorum is present, but may not transact business.

Section 3.13 Conduct of Business. Meetings of the Board will be presided over by the Chairman of the Board, if any, or in his or her absence by the President, or in his or her absence by a chairman chosen at the meeting. The Secretary will act as secretary of the meeting, but in his or her absence the chairman of the meeting may appoint any person to act as secretary of the meeting. The chairman of the meeting will determine the order of business and the procedures at the meeting.

Section 3.14 Action by Written Consent. Any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the Board, or of any committee thereof, may be taken without a meeting if all members of the Board or committee, as the case may be, consent thereto in writing and the writing or writings are filed with the minutes of proceedings of the Board or committee.



**ARTICLE 4**  
**COMMITTEES**

Section 4.1 Audit Committee. The Board by resolution will designate an audit committee (the “**Audit Committee**”) consisting of at least three (3) members. All of the members of the Audit Committee must be Independent Directors. The Audit Committee will review the internal financial controls of the Corporation, and the integrity of its financial reporting, and have such other powers and duties as the Board determines. The Board will adopt a charter, which may be amended from time to time, setting forth the powers and duties of the Audit Committee. The Board will designate by resolution a member of the Audit Committee as a “financial expert” within the meaning of Item 401 of Regulation S-K under the Exchange Act.

Section 4.2 Compensation Committee. The Board by resolution will designate a compensation committee (the “**Compensation Committee**”) consisting of at least two (2) members. All members of the Compensation Committee must be Independent Directors. The Compensation Committee will administer the Corporation’s compensation plans and have such other powers and duties as the Board determines. The Board will adopt a charter, which may be amended from time to time, setting forth the powers and duties of the Compensation Committee.

Section 4.3 Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. The Board by resolution will designate a nominating and corporate governance committee (the “**Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee**”) consisting of at least two (2) members. All members of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee must be Independent Directors. The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee will nominate candidates for election to the Board, formulate corporate governance principles, and have such other powers and duties as the Board determines. The Board will adopt a charter, which may be amended from time to time, setting forth the powers and duties of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

Section 4.4 Independent Directors. For purposes of this Article 4, “**Independent Director**” means a director who is not an officer or employee of the Corporation or its affiliates and who does not have any other relationship with the Corporation which, in the opinion of the Board, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. Without limiting the foregoing, all Independent Directors must satisfy the requirements set forth in the applicable rule concerning director independence of the national securities exchange on which the Corporation’s common stock or other equity security is then listed, and if not listed then the requirements set forth in Rule 5605(a)(2) of the NASDAQ Listing Rules.

Section 4.5 Other Committees. The Board, by resolution adopted by a majority of the entire Board, may designate other committees of directors of one (1) or more directors, which shall serve at the Board’s pleasure and have such powers and duties as the Board determines.

Section 4.6 Meetings and Action of Committees.

(a) The members of all committees will serve at the pleasure of the Board. The Board may designate one (1) or more directors as alternate members of any committee, who may replace any absent or disqualified member at any meeting of the committee; provided, that such alternate members of the Audit Committee, Compensation Committee, and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee must be Independent Directors. Each committee will keep regular minutes of its meetings and report the same to the Board at its next meeting. Each committee may adopt rules of procedure and shall meet as provided by those rules or by resolutions of the Board. Subject to the provisions requiring Independent Directors, any director may serve simultaneously on multiple committees.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in resolutions or charters adopted by the Board, all meetings and actions of committees will be governed by, and held and taken in accordance with, the provisions of Sections 3.7 through 3.14, with such changes in the context of those Bylaws as are necessary to substitute the committee and its members for the Board and its members; provided, however, that (i) the time of regular meetings of committees may be determined either by resolution of the Board or by resolution of the committee; (ii) special meetings of committees may also be called by resolution of the Board; (iii) notice of special meetings of committees will also be given to all alternate members, who will have the right to attend all meetings of the committee; (iv) a majority of the members of a committee will constitute a quorum for the transaction of business at any meeting; and (v) the affirmative vote of a majority of the members of a committee will be required to take action in respect of any matter presented to or requiring the approval of the committee.

## **ARTICLE 5**

### **OFFICERS**

Section 5.1 Designation. The officers of the Corporation will be chosen by the Board and will be a President, a Secretary, and a Treasurer. The Board may also choose one (1) or more vice presidents, assistant secretaries, and assistant treasurers, and such other officers as may be deemed necessary. Any person may hold two (2) or more offices.

Section 5.2 Appointment of Officers. The Board at its first meeting after each annual meeting of stockholders will choose a President, a Secretary, a Treasurer, and a Chief Financial Officer and may choose a Chairman of the Board, each of whom will serve at the pleasure of the Board. The Board at any time may appoint such other officers as it deems necessary who will hold their offices at the pleasure of the Board and who will exercise such powers and perform such duties as will be determined from time to time by the Board.

Section 5.3 Compensation. The compensation of the officers will be fixed from time to time by the Board, upon recommendation from the Compensation Committee, and no officer will be prevented from receiving such compensation by reason of the fact that he or she is also a director of the Corporation. The compensation of the officers or the method by which compensation is set will be set forth in the minutes of the meetings of the Board.

Section 5.4 Vacancies. A vacancy in any office because of death, resignation, removal, disqualification, or otherwise may be filled by the Board at any time.

Section 5.5 Resignation and Removal. Any officer may resign at any time by giving written notice to the President. Any resignation will take effect on the date the President receives such notice or at any later time specified in such notice; and, unless otherwise specified in such notice, acceptance of the resignation will not be necessary to make it effective. Any resignation is without prejudice to the rights, if any, of the Corporation under any contract to which the officer is a party, or of the Board to remove an officer at any time as provided in this Section 5.5. Subject to the rights, if any, of an officer under any contract of employment, the Board may remove any officer, either with or without cause, at any regular or special meeting of the Board.

Section 5.6 Chairman of the Board. The Chairman of the Board, if one is appointed and serving, or if the Chairman of the Board is unable to attend the meeting or the Chairman of the

Board is not then an Independent Director and a meeting of the Independent Directors is called, the Vice Chairman of the Board, will preside at all meetings of the Board and will perform such other duties as may be from time to time assigned to him or her by the Board.

Section 5.7 President. The President will serve as the chief executive officer (the “**Chief Executive Officer**”) of the Corporation may be designated as the Chief Executive Officer if determined by the Board, and will, subject to the control of the Board, be responsible for the general supervision, direction, and control of the business and affairs and supervision of the other officers of the Corporation. The President will have the general powers and duties of management usually vested in the president or chief executive officer of a corporation and will have such other powers and duties as may be from time to time prescribed by the Board.

Section 5.8 Vice Presidents. There will be as many vice presidents (each a “**Vice President**”) as may be determined from time to time and they will perform such duties as may be from time to time assigned to them by the Board or the President. Any one of the vice presidents, as authorized by the Board, will have all the powers and perform all the duties of the President in case of the President’s temporary absence or inability to act. In case of the President’s permanent absence or inability to act, the office will be declared vacant by the Board and a successor chosen by the Board.

Section 5.9 Secretary. The secretary (the “**Secretary**”) will see that the minutes of all meetings of the Board and of any standing committees are kept. The Secretary will be the custodian of the corporate seal, if any, and will affix it to all proper instruments when deemed advisable. The Secretary will give or cause to be given required notices of all meetings of the Board. The Secretary will have charge of all the books and records of the Corporation except the books of account and in general will perform all the duties incident to the office of secretary of a corporation and such other duties as may be assigned to him or her by the Board or the President.

Section 5.10 Treasurer. The treasurer (the “**Treasurer**”) will have general custody of all of the funds and securities of the Corporation except such as may be required by applicable law to be deposited with any state official. The Treasurer will see to the deposit of the funds of the Corporation in such bank or banks as the Board may designate. If required by the Board, the Treasurer will give the Corporation such fidelity bond as may be required, and the premium therefor will be paid by the Corporation as an operating expense.

Section 5.11 Chief Financial Officer. The chief financial officer (the “**Chief Financial Officer**”) shall keep or cause to be kept the books of account of the Corporation in a thorough and proper manner and shall render statements of the financial affairs of the Corporation in such form and as often as required by the Board or the President. The Chief Financial Officer shall perform other duties commonly incident to the office and shall perform such other duties and have such others powers as the Board or the President may from time to time delegate.

Section 5.12 Assistant Secretaries. There may be such number of assistant secretaries (each an “**Assistant Secretary**”) as the Board may from time to time determine, and such persons will perform such functions as may be from time to time assigned to them.

Section 5.13 Assistant Treasurers. There may be such number of assistant treasurers (each an “**Assistant Treasurer**”) as the Board may from time to time determine, and such persons will perform such functions as may be from time to time assigned to them.

**ARTICLE 6**  
**CAPITAL STOCK**

Section 6.1 Issuance. Shares of the Corporation's authorized stock shall, subject to any provisions or limitations of the laws of the State of Nevada, the Articles, or any contracts or agreements to which the Corporation may be a party, be issued in such manner, at such times, upon such conditions and for such consideration as shall be prescribed by the Board.

Section 6.2 Stock Certificates and Uncertificated Shares.

(a) Every holder of stock in the Corporation shall be entitled to have a certificate signed by or in the name of the Corporation by two (2) officers or agents so authorized by the Board, certifying the number of shares of stock owned by him, her, or it in the Corporation; provided, however, that the Board may authorize the issuance of uncertificated shares of some or all of the Corporation's stock. Any such issuance of uncertificated shares shall have no effect on existing certificates for shares until such certificates are surrendered to the Corporation, or on the respective rights and obligations of the stockholders. Whenever such certificate is countersigned or otherwise authenticated by a Transfer Agent, or a transfer clerk and by a registrar (other than the Corporation), then a facsimile of the signatures of any corporate officers or agents, the Transfer Agent, transfer clerk, or the registrar of the Corporation may be printed or lithographed upon the certificate in lieu of the actual signatures. In the event that any officer or officers who have signed, or whose facsimile signatures have been used on any certificate or certificates for stock cease to be an officer or officers because of death, resignation, or other reason, before the certificate or certificates for stock have been delivered by the Corporation, the certificate or certificates may nevertheless be adopted by the Corporation and be issued and delivered as though the person or persons who signed the certificate or certificates, or whose facsimile signature or signatures have been used thereon, had not ceased to be an officer or officers of the Corporation.

(b) Within a reasonable time after the issuance or transfer of uncertificated shares, the Corporation shall send to the registered owner thereof a written statement certifying the number of shares owned by him, her, or it in the Corporation and, at least annually thereafter, the Corporation shall provide to such stockholders of record holding uncertificated shares, a written statement confirming the information contained in such written statement previously sent. Except as otherwise expressly provided by applicable law, the rights and obligations of the stockholders shall be identical whether or not their shares of stock are represented by certificates.

(c) Certificates of stock shall be in such form consistent with applicable law and the Articles as shall be prescribed by the Board. All certificates evidencing shares of the Corporation's stock or other securities issued by the Corporation shall contain such legend or legends as may from time to time be required by the Board, the NRS, or such other federal, state, or local laws or regulations then in effect.

6.3 Transfer of Shares. Shares shall be transferable in the manner prescribed by applicable law, the Articles, and in these Bylaws. Transfers of Shares shall be made on the books of the Corporation only by the person named in the certificate or by his, her, or its attorney lawfully constituted in

writing and, if such Shares are certificated, upon the surrender of the certificate therefore properly endorsed, and payment of all necessary transfer taxes, which certificate shall be canceled before a new certificate shall be issued; or, in the case of uncertificated Shares, upon receipt of proper transfer instructions from the registered holder of the Shares or by such person's attorney lawfully constituted in writing, and upon payment of all necessary transfer taxes and compliance with appropriate procedures for transferring Shares in uncertificated form. Any transfer shall be accompanied by proper evidence of succession, assignment, or authority and, upon receipt of such evidence and compliance with the other applicable provisions of these Bylaws and applicable law; it shall be the duty of the Corporation to record the transaction in its books. The Corporation may treat, as the absolute owner of Shares, the person or persons in whose name or names the Shares are registered on the books of the Corporation.

Section 6.4 Transfer Agent. The Board may appoint one (1) or more transfer agents (each a "**Transfer Agent**") for the transfer and registration of certificates of stock of any class and may require that stock certificates be countersigned and registered by one (1) or more of such Transfer Agents. The Transfer Agent will keep the stock transfer records of the Corporation, which will reflect the name and address of each stockholder of record, the number and class or series of shares issued to each stockholder of record and the date of issue of each such share.

Section 6.5 Lost, Stolen, or Destroyed Certificates. The Board may authorize the issuance of a new certificate in place of a certificate alleged to have been lost, stolen, or destroyed, upon receipt of: (a) an affidavit from the person explaining the loss, theft, or destruction; and (b) a bond or other security from the owner or legal representative of the owner in a sum as the Corporation may reasonably direct to indemnify the Corporation against any claim with respect to the certificate claimed to have been lost, stolen, or destroyed. The Board may, in its discretion, waive the affidavit and bond or other security and authorize the issuance of a new certificate in place of a certificate claimed to have been lost, stolen, or destroyed.

## **ARTICLE 7**

### **INDEMNIFICATION OF DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS**

#### Section 7.1 Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

(a) For purposes of this Article, (A) "**Indemnitee**" shall mean each director or officer who was or is a party to, or is threatened to be made a party to, or is otherwise involved in, any Proceeding (as hereinafter defined), by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or member, manager, or managing member of a predecessor limited liability company or affiliate of such limited liability company, or is or was serving in any capacity at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee, agent, partner, member, manager, or fiduciary of, or in any other capacity for, another corporation or any partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, trust, or other enterprise or affiliate; (B) "**Proceeding**" shall mean any threatened, pending, or completed action, suit, or proceeding (including, without limitation, an action, suit, or proceeding by or in the right of the Corporation), whether civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative; and (C) "**Liabilities**" shall mean any and all expenses, liabilities, and losses (including, without limitation, attorneys' fees, judgments, fines, taxes, penalties, and amounts paid or to be paid in settlement).

(b) Each Indemnitee shall be indemnified and held harmless by the Corporation to the fullest extent permitted by Nevada law, against Liabilities actually and reasonably incurred or suffered by the Indemnitee in connection with any Proceeding; *provided*, that such Indemnitee either is not liable pursuant to NRS 78.138 or acted in good faith and in a manner such Indemnitee reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the Corporation and, with respect to any Proceeding that is criminal in nature, had no reasonable cause to believe that his or her conduct was unlawful. The termination of any Proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction, or upon a plea of *nolo contendere* or its equivalent, does not, of itself, create a presumption that the Indemnitee is liable pursuant to NRS 78.138 or did not act in good faith and in a manner in which he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the Corporation, or that, with respect to any criminal Proceeding he or she had reasonable cause to believe that his or her conduct was unlawful.

(c) With regard solely to a Proceeding that is an action or suit by or in the right of the Corporation to procure a judgment in the Corporation's favor, the Corporation shall not indemnify an Indemnitee against Liabilities for any claim, issue, or matter as to which the Indemnitee has been adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction, after exhaustion of all appeals therefrom, to be liable to the Corporation or for any amounts paid in settlement to the Corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which the Proceeding was brought or other court of competent jurisdiction determines upon application that in view of all the circumstances of the case, the Indemnitee is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such amounts as the court deems proper.

(d) Except as so ordered by a court and for advancement of expenses pursuant to this Article 7, indemnification may not be made to or on behalf of an Indemnitee if a final adjudication establishes that his or her acts or omissions involved intentional misconduct, fraud, or a knowing violation of law and was material to the cause of action.

(e) The expenses of Indemnitees must be paid by the Corporation or through insurance purchased and maintained by the Corporation or through other financial arrangements made by the Corporation, as they are incurred and in advance of the final disposition of the Proceeding, upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of the director or officer to repay the amount if it is ultimately adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction, after exhaustion of all appeals therefrom, that he or she is not entitled to be indemnified by the Corporation.

(f) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, to the extent that a director or officer of the Corporation is successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any Proceeding, including in the defense of any claim, issue, or matter arising out of an action or suit by or in the right of the Corporation to procure a judgment in the Corporation's favor, the Corporation shall indemnify him or her against Liabilities actually and reasonably incurred by him or her in connection with the defense.

Section 7.2 Enforcement. Without the necessity of entering into an express contract, all rights to indemnification and advances to persons under this Article 7 will be deemed to be contractual rights and be effective to the same extent and as if provided for in a contract between the Corporation and the Indemnitee. an Indemnitee may enforce any right to indemnification or advances under this Article 7 in any court of competent jurisdiction if: (a) the Corporation denies the claim for indemnification or advances, in whole or in part; or (b) the Corporation does not dispose of such claim within ninety (90) days of request therefor. The claimant in such enforcement action, if successful in whole or in part, will be entitled to be paid also the expense of prosecuting his claim.

The burden of proof is on the claimant to substantiate that he is entitled to be indemnified under this Article 7. The Corporation will be entitled to raise as a defense to any such action that the claimant has not met the standard of conduct that makes it permissible under NRS Section 78.7502 for the Corporation to indemnify the claimant for the amount claimed. Neither the failure of the Corporation (including the Board, independent legal counsel, or the stockholders) to have, prior to the commencement of such action, made a determination that indemnification of the claimant is proper in the circumstances because the claimant has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in NRS Section 78.7502, nor an actual determination by the Corporation (including the Board, independent legal counsel, or the stockholders) that the claimant has not met such applicable standard of conduct, will be a defense to the action or create a presumption that claimant has not met the applicable standard of conduct.

Section 7.3 Non Exclusivity of Rights. The rights conferred on any person by this Article 7 will not be exclusive of any other right which such person may have or hereafter acquire under any statute, provision of the Articles, Bylaws, agreement, vote of stockholders, or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in the person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while serving the Corporation. The Corporation is specifically authorized to enter into individual contracts with any or all of its directors, officers, employees, or agents respecting indemnification and advances, to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law.

Section 7.4 Survival of Rights. Indemnification pursuant to this Section shall continue as to an Indemnitee who has ceased to be a director or officer of the Corporation or member, manager, or managing member of a predecessor limited liability company or affiliate of such limited liability company, or a director, officer, employee, agent, partner, member, manager, or fiduciary of, or to serve in any other capacity for, another corporation or any partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, trust, or other enterprise or affiliate and shall inure to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors, and administrators.

Section 7.5 Insurance; Other Financial Arrangements.

(a) To the fullest extent permitted by NRS Section 78.752, the Corporation, upon approval by the Board, may purchase and maintain insurance or make other financial arrangements on behalf of any person required or permitted to be indemnified pursuant to this Article 7 for any liability asserted against him or her and liability and expenses incurred by him or her in his or her capacity as a director, officer, employee, member, manager, managing member, or agent, or arising out of his or her status as such, whether or not the Corporation has the authority to indemnify him or her against such liability and expenses.

(b) The other financial arrangements which may be made by the Corporation may include the following (i) the creation of a trust fund; (ii) the establishment of a program of self-insurance; (iii) the securing of its obligation of indemnification by granting a security interest or other lien on any assets of the Corporation; and/or (iv) the establishment of a letter of credit, guarantee or surety. No financial arrangement made pursuant to this subsection may provide protection for a person adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction, after exhaustion of all appeals therefrom, to be liable for intentional misconduct, fraud, or a knowing violation of law, except with respect to advancement of expenses or indemnification ordered by a court.

(c) Any insurance or other financial arrangement made on behalf of a person pursuant to this Article 7 may be provided by the Corporation or any other person approved by the Board, even if all

or part of the other person's stock or other securities is owned by the Corporation. In the absence of fraud (i) the decision of the Board as to the propriety of the terms and conditions of any insurance or other financial arrangement made pursuant to this Article 7 and the choice of the person to provide the insurance or other financial arrangement is conclusive; and (ii) the insurance or other financial arrangement is not void or voidable and does not subject any director approving it to personal liability for his action; even if a director approving the insurance or other financial arrangement is a beneficiary of the insurance or other financial arrangement.

Section 7.6 Indemnification of Employees and Other Persons. The Corporation may, by action of its Board and to the extent provided in such action, indemnify employees and other persons as though they were Indemnitees.

Section 7.7 Amendment. The provisions of this Article 7 relating to indemnification shall constitute a contract between the Corporation and each of its directors and officers which may be modified as to any director or officer only with that person's consent or as specifically provided in this Section 7.7. Notwithstanding any other provision of these Bylaws relating to their amendment generally, any repeal or amendment of this Article 7 which is adverse to any director or officer shall apply to such director or officer only on a prospective basis, and shall not limit, eliminate, or impair the rights of an Indemnitee to indemnification with respect to any action or failure to act occurring prior to the time of such repeal or amendment. Notwithstanding any other provision of these Bylaws (including, without limitation, Section 8.8 below), no repeal or amendment of these Bylaws shall affect any or all of this Article 7 so as to limit or reduce the indemnification in any manner unless adopted by the unanimous vote of the directors of the Corporation then serving; provided, that no such amendment shall have a retroactive effect inconsistent with the preceding sentence.

## **ARTICLE 8**

### **MISCELLANEOUS**

Section 8.1 Corporate Seal. The Board may, but is not required to, adopt a corporate seal, which shall be in the form of a circle and shall bear the Corporation's name and the year and state in which it was incorporated.

Section 8.2 Fiscal Year. The Board may by resolution determine the Corporation's fiscal year. Until changed by the Board, the Corporation's fiscal year shall be the calendar year.

Section 8.3 Voting of Shares in Other Corporations. Unless another person is designated by the Board, shares in other corporations which are held by the Corporation may be represented and voted by the President or a Vice President of the Corporation or by proxy or proxies appointed by one of them.

Section 8.4 Checks; Drafts; Evidences of Indebtedness. From time to time, the Board will determine by resolution which person or persons may sign or endorse all checks, drafts, other orders for payment of money, notes, or other evidences of indebtedness that are issued in the name of or payable to the Corporation, and only the persons so authorized shall sign or endorse those instruments.

Section 8.5 Corporate Contracts and Instruments; How Executed. The Board may authorize any officers or agents to enter into any contract or execute any instrument in the name of and on behalf of the Corporation. Such authority may be general or confined to specific instances.



Section 8.6 Provisions Additional to Provisions of Law. All restrictions, limitations, requirements, and other provisions of these Bylaws shall be construed, insofar as possible, as supplemental and additional to all provisions of law applicable to the subject matter thereof and shall be fully complied with in addition to the said provisions of law unless such compliance shall be illegal.

Section 8.7 Provisions Contrary to Law. Any article, section, subsection, subdivision, sentence, clause, or phrase of these Bylaws which is contrary to or inconsistent with any applicable provisions of law, shall not apply so long as said provisions of law shall remain in effect, but such result shall not affect the validity or applicability of any other portions of these Bylaws.

Section 8.8 Amendments. The Board may make the Bylaws of the Corporation. Unless otherwise prohibited by applicable law, the Board may adopt, amend, or repeal these Bylaws, or any portion hereof, including any bylaw adopted by the stockholders. Whenever an amendment or new Bylaws are adopted, the amendment or the new Bylaws will be copied in the Corporation's minute book with the original Bylaws.

Section 8.9 Changes in Nevada Law. References in these Bylaws to Nevada law or the NRS or to any provision thereof shall be to such law as it existed on the date these Bylaws were adopted or as such law thereafter may be changed; provided, that (a) in the case of any change which expands the liability of directors or officers or limits the indemnification rights or the rights to advancement of expenses which the Corporation may provide in Article 7 hereof, the rights to limited liability, to indemnification and to the advancement of expenses provided in the Articles and/or these Bylaws shall continue as theretofore to the extent permitted by applicable law; and (b) if such change permits the Corporation, without the requirement of any further action by stockholders or directors, to limit further the liability of directors or limit the liability of officers or to provide broader indemnification rights or rights to the advancement of expenses than the Corporation was permitted to provide prior to such change, then liability thereupon shall be so limited and the rights to indemnification and the advancement of expenses shall be so broadened to the extent permitted by applicable law.

CERTAIN CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENT (INDICATED BY \*\*) HAS BEEN OMITTED AND FILED SEPARATELY WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION PURSUANT TO A REQUEST FOR CONFIDENTIAL TREATMENT.

Modification Number: 1

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

<b>Effective Date:</b>	<u>April 15, 2015</u>	<b>Sponsor:</b>	<u>Galectin Therapeutics, Inc.</u>
<b>Protocol No:</b>	<u>GT-026 (Project #NASH-CX)</u>	<b>Sponsor Contact:</b>	<u>Jack Callicutt</u>
<b>PPD Project Manager:</b>	<u>**</u>	<b>Bus Dev Director:</b>	<u>**</u>

The Project Addendum by and between PPD Development, L.P., a Delaware limited partnership and successor-in-interest to PPD Development, LLC, (“PPD”) and Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. (“Sponsor”) effective as of January 10, 2015 regarding the above-referenced Protocol shall be modified as follows:

**General:**

- The timeline is being extended by approximately seven (7) months, where the PPD end of Involvement date has been revised from 01 July 2017 to 01 February 2018.
- Inflationary costs associated with this timeline extension have been captured as a line item in the study budget.
- New activities have been added in North America (NA) to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
- New activities have been added to capture the Direct and Pass Through Costs for Central Reader Site Evaluation, Interim Monitoring, and Site Closeout Visits for Hepatic Venous Pressure Gradient (HPVG) and Liver Biopsy.
- New activity has been added to capture the labor associated with the mapping of raw data to the Study Data Tabulation Module (SDTM).
- The Site Country Mix has been revised as detailed below:

<u>Country</u>	<u>Number of sites per Project Addendum</u>	<u>Number of sites per Project Addendum Modification #1</u>
**	**	**
**	**	**

- All tasks associated with \*\*, where work has not already occurred, have been removed as the study has left the country entirely.

Estimated costs associated with this Project Addendum Modification:

\$ 218,201.92	Direct Fees
\$7,586,684.89	Pass Through Costs
<u>\$7,804,886.80</u>	<u>Total Costs</u>

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

## PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION

<u>Cumulative</u>	<u>Budget NA</u>	<u>Budget EMEA</u>	<u>Total Budget</u>
<b>TOTAL DIRECT COSTS</b>	\$ 9,059,751.07	\$ 24,941.56	\$ 9,084,692.63
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>	\$13,293,084.54	\$368,913.80	\$13,661,998.34
<b>TOTAL STUDY COSTS</b>	\$22,352,835.61	\$393,855.36	\$22,746,690.97
<b>Prior</b>			
<b>TOTAL DIRECT COSTS</b>	\$ 8,842,785.02	\$ 23,705.69	\$ 8,866,490.71
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>	\$ 5,738,284.26	\$337,029.19	\$ 6,075,313.45
<b>TOTAL STUDY COSTS</b>	\$14,581,069.28	\$360,734.88	\$14,941,804.16
<b>Incremental</b>			
<b>TOTAL DIRECT COSTS</b>	\$ 216,966.05	\$ 1,235.87	\$ 218,201.92
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>	\$ 7,554,800.28	\$ 31,884.61	\$ 7,586,684.89
<b>TOTAL STUDY COSTS</b>	\$ 7,771,766.33	\$ 33,120.47	\$ 7,804,886.80

A revised estimated study timeline is attached hereto as Exhibit A and which replaces the estimated study timeline set forth in section 1.16 of Exhibit A to the Project Addendum.

A detailed explanation of the changes to the budget is attached hereto as Exhibit B. A revised Central Labs budget is attached hereto as Exhibit C. A revised study budget is attached hereto at Exhibit D, and which replaces the budget set forth in Exhibit B to the Project Addendum.

Payment of such costs shall be made in accordance with the Revised Payment Schedule attached hereto as Exhibit E which shall replace the payment schedule set forth in Exhibit C to the Project Addendum.

All Exhibits attached hereto and incorporated herein by reference.

This Project Addendum Modification may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument. Each party may execute this Project Addendum Modification by facsimile transmission or in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) sent by electronic mail. Facsimile or PDF signatures of authorized signatories of the parties will be deemed to be original signatures, will be valid and binding, and, upon delivery, will constitute due execution of this Project Addendum Modification.

Upon execution by the parties, this Project Addendum Modification will be made a part of the Project Addendum and incorporated by reference therein. Except as expressly provided herein or in any other mutual written agreement by the parties, all terms and conditions contained in the Project Addendum shall remain in full force and effect. In the event of any conflict between the terms of this Project Addendum Modification and the Project Addendum, the terms of this Project Addendum Modification shall govern and control. All capitalized terms used but not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Project Addendum.

SIGNATURES FOLLOW ON NEXT PAGE

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**ACCEPTED AND AGREED:**

**PPD Development, L.P.**

**By: PPD GP, LLC**

**Its General Partner**

By:     /s/ Patti McNamara    

Name:     Patti McNamara    

Title:     VP Finance    

Date:     March 11, 2016    

**Galectin Therapeutics, Inc.**

By:     /s/ Peter G. Traber    

Name:     Peter G. Traber    

Title:     CEO and CMO    

Date:     March 11, 2016    

*Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank*

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**Exhibit A  
Revised Estimated Study Timeline**

<u>Activity</u>	<u>As of Project Addendum</u>	<u>As of Project Addendum Modification #1</u>
	<b>Duration in Months</b>	
Pre-Study Activities	**	**
Enrollment Period	**	**
Treatment Period	**	**
Close-Down Period	**	**
Total PPD Commitment	**	**

*Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank*

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**Exhibit B  
Detailed Explanation of Change**

The Detailed Explanation of Change follows this cover page

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #2			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
<b>Project Management</b>												
Develop Country Budget and Payment Schedule Template	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
ICF Local Customization - Review and Approve	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
ICF Local Customization - Review and Approve - Amendments	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Project Management - Start-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Project Management - Enrollment	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Project Management - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	
<b>Study Start-Up</b>												
ICF Local Customization	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Management of Translation of Protocol, Investigator Brochure, ICF & Technical Documents	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Review of Translation of ICF	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Client Teleconferences	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Internal Team Meetings and Ongoing Training	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Site Intelligence and Activation Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Hepatic Venous Pressure Gradient (HVPG) Vendor Site Evaluation Visit Prep/ Follow-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Hepatic Venous Pressure Gradient (HVPG) Site Evaluation Visits for Central Reader.
HVPG Vendor Site Evaluation Visit - Time On Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG Site Evaluation Visits for Central Reader.
HVPG Vendor Site Evaluation Visit - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG Site Evaluation Visits for Central Reader.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #2			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
<b>Clinical Management</b>												
ICF Local Customization - Amendments	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Amendments - Management of Translation of Protocol, Investigator Brochures, ICF & Technical Documents	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Amendments - Review of Translation of ICF	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Site Initiation Visits - Prep/Admin/Follow-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Initiation Visits - Time on Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Initiation Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Annual Investigator File Audits	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Site Closeout Visits - Prep/Admin/Follow-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Closeout Visits - Time on Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Closeout Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Unblinded Investigator Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased due to the inability to identify unblinded Clinical Research Associates (CRAs) in time to attend meeting.
CRA Team Meetings	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Unblinded CRA Team Meetings	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Clinical Team Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Clinical Management - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
HVPG Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Prep/Follow-Up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG Interim Monitoring Visits (IMVs) for Central Reactor.
HVPG Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Time On Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG IMVs for Central Reactor.
HVPG Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG IMVs for Central Reactor.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.



Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #2			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
HVPG Vendor Site Closeout Visit - Prep/Follow-Up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG Closeout Visits (COVs) for Central Reader.
HVPG Vendor Site Closeout Visit - Time On Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG COVs for Central Reader.
HVPG Vendor Site Closeout Visit - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with HVPG COVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Prep/Follow-Up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy IMVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Time On Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy IMVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Interim Monitoring Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy IMVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Site Closeout Visits - Prep/Follow-Up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy COVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Site Closeout Visits - Time On Site	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy COVs for Central Reader.
Liver Biopsy Vendor Site Closeout Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Liver Biopsy COVs for Central Reader.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	
<b>Clinical Clinical Supplies</b>												
Identify, Select and Negotiate Contracts with Clinical Supply Vendors	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Label Text Development	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Label Text Translation Coordination	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Clinical Supply Forecasting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Monitor/Track Study Progress, Inventory Levels and Communication with Team/Sponsor	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Dept Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Distribution Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Investigators Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the labor associated with attending the Investigators Meeting.
Global Clinical Supplies - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	
<b>IVRS</b>												
Investigational Product (IP) Accountability Module	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with Investigational Product (IP) Accountability Module.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #2			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
<b>Data Management</b>												
Client Teleconferences	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Internal Team Meetings	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Quality Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
DM Project Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Data Management - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Subtotal</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	
<b>Pharmacovigilance</b>												
Data Safety Monitoring Board Set-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Revised and rebuilt the activity as the new activity below in order to increase the labor per unit due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Revised - Data Safety Monitoring Board Set-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added per above in order to capture the labor associated with DSMB Set-up.
Analysis of Similar Events	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Development Safety Update Report (DSUR) Preparation	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Senior Medical Officer for Canada - Monthly Maintenance	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Senior Medical Officer Review of Canadian CTA	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Senior Medical Officer Review of Canadian CTA Amendment	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Data Safety Monitoring Board Face-to-Face Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Revised and rebuilt the activity as the new activity below in order to increase the labor per unit due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Revised - Data Safety Monitoring Board Face to Face Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added per above in order to capture the labor associated with Data Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB) Face to Face meetings.
Data Safety Monitoring Board Teleconference Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Revised and rebuilt the activity as the new activity below in order to increase the labor per unit due to Protocol Amendment 1.
Revised - Data Safety Monitoring Board Teleconference Meeting	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added per above in order to capture the labor associated with DSMB Teleconferences.
Pharmacovigilance Team Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
Unblinded Medical Monitor	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with an Unblinded Medical Monitor.
PPD - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Biostatistics</b>												
Biostats Team Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Mapping Raw Data to Study Data Tabulation Model (SDTM)	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture labor associated with the mapping of raw data to the Study Data Tabulation Model (SDTM).
Biostatistics - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Medical Writing</b>												
OSUR	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Revise CRF	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Medical Writing - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Quality Assurance</b>												
Information Governance & Compliance - Country File Set-up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Information Governance & Compliance - Country File Archiving and Transfer	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved, due to the study leaving Canada.
Clinical Supplies QA - Project Agreements	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
Clinical Supplies QA - Project Support	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity decreased as unit is no longer projected to be achieved.
<b>Regulatory Affairs</b>												
Registration of Clinical Trials - Maintenance	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
<b>Clinical Pharmacology (PK)</b>												
Pharmacokinetics - Protocol Amendment 1	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the additional labor needed for Protocol Amendment 1.
<b>Total Direct Costs</b>												
<b>Inflation</b>												Added a one-time inflation adjustment to capture inflationary increases associated with the seven (7) month increase to the study duration.
<b>Timeline Extension Services Discount (CMT):</b>												PPD is providing a one-time discount associated with services performed in regards to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
<b>Total Discounted Direct Costs</b>												

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost NA	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #2			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Justification
			Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	
<b>Pass Through Costs</b>												
Central Laboratory Fees	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
Investigator Fees	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to Protocol Amendment.
Site Closeout Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Site Initiation Visits - Travel	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to additional unit needed, as sponsor requested an additional site.
Central Reader - HYPG	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs projected through the duration of the study.
Central Reader - Liver Biopsy	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs projected through the duration of the study.
Data Safety Monitoring Board Member Honoraria	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to include payments for three (3) members, which will cover the contracted caps for each member.
Site Evaluation Visits - HYPG - Central Reader	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to do a site evaluation visit for HYPG Central Reader.
Site Closeout Visits - HYPG - Central Reader	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to do a site closeout visit for HYPG Central Reader.
Site Closeout Visits - Liver Biopsy - Central Reader	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to do a site closeout visit for Liver Biopsy Central Reader.
Interim Monitoring Visits - HYPG - Central Reader	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to do an interim monitoring visit for HYPG Central Reader.
Interim Monitoring Visits - Liver Biopsy - Central Reader	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the costs needed to do an interim monitoring visit for Liver Biopsy Central Reader.
Investigator Meeting Travel - Clinical Supplies Project Manager	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	New activity added to capture the cost for Clinical Supplies Project Manager to attend the Investigator Meeting.
<b>Total Pass Throughs</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	\$7,554,909.28
<b>Total Study Costs</b>			**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	\$7,771,766.53

Subtotals and Totals included in the Cumulative and Prior sections are for reference to the budget grid only and do not represent totaling of the numbers included in this document. The Discrete Subtotals and Totals are representative of the numbers in this document.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

		Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1				Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			
Department/Activity	Unit Type	Unit Cost EMEA	Total Hours EMEA	# of Units EMEA	Budget EMEA	Total Hours EMEA	# of Units EMEA	Budget EMEA	Total Hours EMEA	# of Units EMEA	Budget EMEA	Justification
Pharmacovigilance												
Pharmacovigilance Team Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
<b>Subtotal</b>												-
<b>Total Direct Costs</b>												
Inflation												
<b>Total Discounted Direct Costs</b>		**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Added a line item inflation adjustment to capture inflationary increases associated with the seven (7) month increase to the study duration.
<b>Pass Through Costs</b>												
Central Labs Costs EMEA												
<b>Total Pass Throughs</b>		**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	Activity increased due to the seven (7) month timeline extension.
<b>Total Study Costs</b>		**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	

Subtotals and Totals included in the Cumulative and Prior sections are for reference to the budget grid only and do not represent totaling of the numbers included in this document. The Discrete Subtotals and Totals are representative of the numbers in this document.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**Exhibit C  
Revised Central Labs Budget**

The Revised Central Labs Budget follows this cover page

Page 13 of 31

PPD Central Labs  
09-Jul-2015  
Galactin Therapeutics, Inc.  
GT-025  
BC: 58004-01 Sc2 M1  
Central Lab BC: 58004-02

MOD #1

Budget Summary GT-025	Total Charge (USD)
Laboratory Testing	**
Sample Management	**
Kits and Supplies	**
Clinical Trial Services Fees	**
Direct Costs Estimate:	**
Logistics (Pass-Through) Estimate:	**
<b>Total Estimate:</b>	<b>**</b>

Original Contract (Rev 2)

Budget Summary GT-025	Total Charge (USD)	Differences
Laboratory Testing	**	**
Sample Management	**	**
Kits and Supplies	**	**
Clinical Trial Services Fees	**	**
Direct Costs Estimate:	**	**
Logistics (Pass-Through) Estimate:	**	**
<b>Total Estimate:</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>

MOD #1

Regional Budget Summary GT-025	NA & LA Region	EMEA Region	AsiaPac Region	China
Laboratory Testing	**	**	**	**
Sample Management	**	**	**	**
Kits and Supplies	**	**	**	**
Clinical Trial Services Fees	**	**	**	**
Regional Direct Costs Estimate:	**	**	**	**
Regional Logistics (Pass-Through) Estimate:	**	**	**	**
<b>Regional Total Estimate:</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>

Countries	Sites	Screened Subjects	Enrolled Subjects	Completed Subjects	%
United States	**	**	**	**	**
Canada	**	**	**	**	**
North America	**	**	**	**	**
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>	<b>**</b>

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.









Exchange Rates:

**	**
**	**
**	**

Global Logistics (Pass-Through)																					
Country	Sites	Unit Type	Outbound, supplies to sites				Inbound, Ambient/Refrig, sites to PPD				Inbound, Frozen, sites to PPD					Total Change (USD)					
			Courier	Unit Cost (Euro)	Unit Cost (USD)	# of Units	Sub-total	Courier	Unit Cost (Euro)	Unit Cost (USD)	# of Units	Sub-total	Courier	Unit Cost (Euro)	Unit Cost (USD)		# of Units	Sub-total	Dry Ice and shippers		
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Referral lab courier costs																					
			Frequency	Courier	Unit Type	Unit Cost (Euro)	Unit Cost (USD)	# of Units	Sub-total	Comments											Total Change (USD)
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**												**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**												**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**												**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**												**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**												**
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>			NA/LA region (USD)	**	EMEA region (USD)	**	AsiaPac region (USD)	**	China (USD)	**											**
Original Contract (Rev 2)																					
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>			NA/LA region (USD)	**	EMEA region (USD)	**	AsiaPac region (USD)	**	China (USD)	**											**
Total Differences																					
<b>TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS</b>			NA/LA region (USD)	\$31,297.91	EMEA region (USD)	\$0.00	AsiaPac region (USD)	\$0.00	China (USD)	\$0.00											\$31,297.91

\* Transportation costs do not include Saturday delivery charges, fees, tariffs, duties and fuel surcharge. This will be invoiced at the prevailing rate.  
 \* Transportation fees are estimates only and based on primary sites.  
 \* Client will be invoiced based on actual fees incurred.  
 \* Laboratory kits may accommodate more than one patient visit per inbound shipping box. For purposes of the estimate, 1 visit per inbound box has been assumed as average.  
 \* Drive-away and trans-shipment to international port of departure may apply. Applicable customs fees charged as pass through cost.  
 \* Inbound transport costs are based on Weekday priority overnight shipments.  
 \* Outbound kits have standard transit time of 2-5 days. Overnight priority shipping provided with sponsor approval at additional shipping cost.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**Terms and Conditions**

**GENERAL**

- Study set up will commence upon written acceptance of Contract and Central Laboratory Specifications (CLS).
- The costs contained within this Proposal are valid for \*\* from date of proposal.
- The prices contained within this Proposal are estimates based upon information provided by Sponsor. Cost will be revised if the Sponsor provides an amended protocol or updated information.
- \*\* no charge, regardless of number of users.
- All protocol materials will be archived for \*\* from the end of PPD involvement. Requests for protocol materials will be shipped at the expense of the Sponsor/CRO.

**SET-UP**

- PPD Global Central Labs requires \*\* from signed CLS for study initiation. Study initiation is defined as the first investigational site to receive specimen collection kits.

•\*\*

- Sponsor requested changes \*\* will result in additional charges to be determined based upon the complexity of the revisions.
- PPD Global Central Labs has one global database that supports all regions within the study. Global set-up fees will be invoiced upon project initiation once database set-up activities are complete.

**TRAINING/TRAVEL**

- If requested to attend a Kick off meeting or investigator meeting, \*\* Central Labs presenter at one meeting including preparation, excluding travel expenses billed as pass through. This cost assumes a one day meeting with one day for travel. \*\*. Sponsor request of technical attendees will be charged additional fees of \*\*.
- Attendance at the investigator meeting via WebEx will be charged \*\*.
- Site training via conference call for protocol specific laboratory procedures is available at sponsor's request. This will be invoiced at \*\*.
- On site training visits to outline protocol specific laboratory procedures at the sponsor's request, will be invoiced at a rate of \*\*.

**TRANSPORTATION**

•\*\*

•\*\*

•\*\*

•\*\*

**MODIFICATIONS**

- Any services requested by Sponsor (or sites) and not included in this cost estimate will be charged separately. Services rendered will be invoiced as performed and a Contract Modification will be issued.
- Out of protocol testing will be invoiced per the unit price with an additional \*\* Project Management fee, per request.
- Additional charges will apply for any off-cycle or expedited testing.
- Specimens requiring off hour technician/processing time, will be invoiced with an added service charge of \*\*.
- Any sample that is UTP (Unable To Perform) will be charged a Sample Handling fee.
- A sample destruction fee will be invoiced for any sample that is required to be destroyed. This fee will be charged per sample destroyed.
- Expedited shipping fees will be applied at \*\* with less than \*\* notice, plus shipping costs.
- Additional label sets provided at an additional fee of \*\*.
- Additional requisition forms provided at an additional fee of \*\*.
- Additional collection flow charts (CFC) provided at an additional fee of \*\*.
- Set up of additional sites will incur additional site initiation fees and other applicable charges.
- Database modifications will be invoiced at \*\*.
- Non-Standard Services for Data Management and Custom programming will be supplied upon request and billed at a programming rate of \*\* for services included but not limited to:
  - a. Custom data file formats
  - b. Custom data management reports
  - c. Data reconciliation requirements
- Returned kit fee of \*\* (break-down and disposal of kit contents) plus return shipping charges.
- Hard copy reports will be invoiced at \*\*.
- Translation costs reflect the average cost to translate a typical manual. Translation costs for other documents besides the manual, will be charged \*\*.
- Lab Manuals will be supplied to all sites upon initiation as part of the study set-up. Amended or revised manuals will be supplied at \*\*.
- If adjustments to kits are required, the kit fee may be revised and billed at the following rates:

Kit Tier	NA & LATAM	EMEA	China	AsiaPac
**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**

This budget for central laboratory services is based upon protocol requirements provided at the time of the RFP and is an estimate only. PPD Central Labs will invoice Sponsor for actual services rendered and testing performed. Invoices may, therefore, differ from the Budget due to differences in actual services rendered versus those contained within this Budget.

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**Exhibit D  
Revised Study Budget**

The Revised Study Budget follows this cover page

Page 20 of 31

Department/Activity	Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1			Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum			Incremental Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1		
	Budget NA	Budget EMEA	Total Budget	Budget NA	Budget EMEA	Total Budget	Budget NA	Budget EMEA	Total Budget
Project Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Study Start-Up	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Clinical Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Global Clinical Supplies	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
IVRS	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Data Management	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Pharmacovigilance	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Biostatistics	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Medical Writing	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Quality Assurance	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Regulatory Affairs	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Clinical Pharmacology (PK)	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
Electronic Data Capture	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
TOTAL DIRECT COSTS	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
TOTAL DISCOUNTED DIRECT COSTS	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
TOTAL PASS THROUGH COSTS	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
TOTAL STUDY COSTS	\$22,352,835.61	\$393,855.36	\$22,746,690.97	\$14,581,069.28	\$360,734.88	\$14,941,804.16	\$7,771,766.33	\$33,120.47	\$7,804,886.80

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

















Cumulative Study Budget as of Project Addendum Modification #1										
Department/Activity	Unit Type	Total Hours NA	Unit Cost NA	# of Units NA	Budget NA	Total Hours EMEA	Unit Cost EMEA	# of Units EMEA	Budget EMEA	Total Budget
<b>Pass Through Costs</b>										
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
<b>Total Study Costs</b>					<b>\$22,352,835.61</b>		<b>\$393,855.36</b>		<b>\$22,746,690.97</b>	

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**PROJECT ADDENDUM MODIFICATION**

**Exhibit E**

**Revised Payment Schedule**

The Revised Payment Schedule follows this cover page

Page 30 of 31

PPD Payment Schedule  
 Sponsor: Galectin  
 BC Number: 58004-01  
 Protocol :GT-026

**Direct Costs:**

Execution of Contract	**
Monthly Project Management Fee	**
Milestones:	
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
**	**
<b>Total Direct Costs</b>	<b>**</b>

**Indirect Costs:**

**	**
**	**
<b>Total Clinical Grants</b>	<b>**</b>
**	**
**	**
<b>Total Pass Through Costs</b>	<b>**</b>

**Project Grand Total 22,746,690.97**

\*\* \*\*  
 \*\* \*\*  
 \*\* \*\*  
 \*\* \*\*

\*\* Certain information on this page has been omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.



**SUBSIDIARIES OF REGISTRANT**

The following is a list of the Corporation's subsidiaries as of December 31, 2015. The Corporation owns, directly or indirectly, 100% of the voting securities of each subsidiary, unless noted otherwise.

<u>NAME</u>	<u>STATE OR JURISDICTION OF ORGANIZATION</u>
Galectin Therapeutics Security Corp.	Delaware
Galectin Sciences LLC	Georgia

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in Registration Statement Nos. 333-208674, 333-116629, 333-109893, 333-159247, 333-198070, 333-176306, and 333-176305 on Form S-8, and Registration Nos. 333-194747, 333-172849, 333-150898, 333-148911, 333-132459, 333-118907, 333-115118, 333-111650 and 333-109887 on Form S-3, of our reports dated March 14, 2016 included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company") relating to the consolidated balance sheet of the Company as of December 31, 2015, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in redeemable convertible preferred stock and stockholders' equity, and cash flows and the related financial statement schedules for the year then ended, and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting for the Company as of December 31, 2015.

/S/ CHERRY BEKAERT LLP

Atlanta, Georgia  
March 14, 2016

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in Registration Statement Nos. 333-208674, 333-116629, 333-109893, 333-159247, 333-198070, 333-176306, and 333-176305 on Form S-8, and Registration Nos. 333-194747, 333-172849, 333-150898, 333-148911, 333-132459, 333-118907, 333-115118, 333-111650 and 333-109887 on Form S-3 of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. of our report dated March 18, 2015, relating to our audit of the consolidated financial statements which appears in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Galectin Therapeutics, Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2015.

/S/ RSM US LLP

Charlotte, North Carolina

March 15, 2016

## Certification pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) of the Securities Act of 1934

I, Peter G. Traber, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Galectin Therapeutics Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and we have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

March 15, 2016

/s/ Peter G. Traber

---

Name: Peter G. Traber, M.D.  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and President  
(principal executive officer)

## Certification pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) of the Securities Act of 1934

I, Jack W. Callicutt, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Galectin Therapeutics Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and we have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

March 15, 2016

/s/ Jack W. Callicutt

---

Name: Jack W. Callicutt  
Title: Chief Financial Officer  
(principal financial and accounting officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ended December 31, 2015 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, Peter G. Traber, Chief Executive Officer and President of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as adopted pursuant to §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that, to my knowledge:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result of operations of the Company.

March 15, 2016

/s/ Peter G. Traber

---

Name: Peter G. Traber, M.D.  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and President  
(principal executive officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of Galectin Therapeutics Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ended December 31, 2015 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, Jack W. Callicutt, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as adopted pursuant to §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that, to my knowledge:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result of operations of the Company.

March 15, 2016

/s/ Jack W. Callicutt

---

Name: Jack W. Callicutt  
Title: Chief Financial Officer  
(principal financial and accounting officer)